

connecting files, flank security, and rear guard, provide for traveling overwatch.

2. Unit decides to bypass or attack enemy forces encountered with economy of force before massing and concentrating on the enemy main body.

---

**INF-MAN-6003:** Conduct helicopter-borne/tiltrotor-borne operations (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, attachments, an order, and assault support aircraft, and operating in the full range of environmental conditions, during daylight or limited visibility.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission and meet commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Task organize.
4. Integrate attachments as required.
5. Integrate fires.
6. Conduct tactical logistics.
7. Prep for combat.
8. Execute command and control.
9. Conduct insert.
10. Move to assault position.
11. Breach obstacles as necessary.
12. Conduct gap crossing if necessary.
13. Establish support by fire position(s).
14. Execute actions of the objective.
15. Consolidate.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

INF-CSS-6001	INF-C2-6009	INF-FSPT-6001
INF-C2-6003	INF-C2-6007	

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

INF-MAN-5003	INF-MAN-5004
--------------	--------------

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-16.6B Fire Support Team (FiST) Techniques and Procedures
2. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
5. MCWP 3-11.4 Helicopter Borne Operations
6. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon
7. MCWP 3-16.2 Procedures for the Marine Corps Fire Support
8. MCWP 3-24 Assault Support

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	20 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	800 rounds per weapon
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	800 rounds per unit
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	120 rounds per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	800 rounds per weapon
A143 Cartridge, 7.62mm Ball M80 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A151 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball/1 Tracer Li	800 rounds per weapon
A358 Cartridge, 9mm TP-T M939 for AT-4 Tr	1 round per weapon
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 signals per weapon
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 signals per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	2 signals per platoon
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 rounds per weapon
BA16 Cartridge, 60mm HE M720A1 w/Multi-Op	16 rounds per section
B643 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M888	16 rounds per section
B647 Cartridge, 60mm Illuminating M721	12 rounds per section
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	4 rounds per weapon
C995 Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT	3 rockets per platoon
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	20 grenades per platoon
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	20 fuses per platoon
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	10 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
HA21 Rocket, 21mm Sub-Caliber, M72AS Trai	3 rockets per platoon
HA29 Rckt 66mm HE, M72A7, LAW W/GRAZE	3 rockets per platoon
FMPR Rocket, FOTS Multi-Purpose Round	1 rockets per section
FPTR Rocket, FOTS Practice Training Round	3 rockets per section
L305. SIGNAL , ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A	3 signals per platoon
L307 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L314 Signal, Illumination Ground Green St	3 signals per platoon
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M	3 projectiles per platoon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course  
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range  
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live  
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: This event can be augmented through use of DVTE and CACCTUS.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

PLANNING CONSIDERATIONS:

1. Tactical load/tactical spread
2. HWSAT planning

3. Bump plans
  4. Pickup zone/landing zone {primary/alt}
  5. Go/no go criteria
  6. Refuel plans
  7. Tactical recovery of aircraft/personnel
  8. Comm considerations
  9. Signal plan
  10. Key GCE billets
  11. MACO
  12. Immediate re-embark
  13. Emergency extract plan
  14. Brevity codes
  15. Signal plan
  16. Abort criteria
  17. Contingencies
  18. Reaction forces
- FOCUS ON: Ground tactical plan, landing plan, air movement plan, load plan, and staging plan, etc).

---

**INF-MAN-6004:** Conduct a Raid (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given the order to conduct a limited objective attack with a planned withdrawal, a unit, and equipment.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission, meet commander's intent, and maintain accountability of all personnel.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct intelligence preparation necessary to allow for precise planning.
2. Organize raid force into functional groups/elements, each tailored to carry out essential tasks (normally: command, reconnaissance, support, assault, security, and reserve).
3. Develop a scheme of maneuver that is simple, detailed, and clearly understood by all.
4. Conduct fire support planning, and establish control measures that maximize detail, precision, and surprise.
5. Develop contingency plans for premature detection.
6. Identify Go/No Go criteria, abort-decisions during movement to objective, and decision points to execute alternate plans.
7. Considering the situation and time available back plan from actions on the objective to develop a scheme of maneuver that includes withdrawal (and insert/extract means if appropriate).
8. Infiltrate to the objective.
9. Isolate the objective.
10. Conduct actions on the objective.
11. Before the enemy has time to react, withdraw along specified routes, in a specified sequence, with identified elements and/or fires used to cover/delay.
12. Send and receive required reports.
13. Ensure accountability of all personnel and equipment throughout the raid.
14. Conduct debrief.

15. Conduct rehearsals and preparations to address all contingencies and alternate plans.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

INF-CSS-6001	INF-C2-6009	INF-FSPT-6001
INF-C2-6003	INF-C2-6001	INF-C2-6007

**CHAINED EVENTS:** INF-MAN-5004

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCRP 3-16.6B Fire Support Team (FiST) Techniques and Procedures
3. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
4. MCWP 3-11.4 Helicopter Borne Operations
5. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
6. MCWP 3-16.2 Procedures for the Marine Corps Fire Support
7. MCWP 3-24 Assault Support
8. MCWP 3-43.1 Raid Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	20 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	800 rounds per weapon
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	800 rounds per unit
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	120 rounds per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	800 rounds per weapon
A143 Cartridge, 7.62mm Ball M80 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A151 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball/1 Tracer Li	800 rounds per weapon
A358 Cartridge, 9mm TP-T M939 for AT-4 Tr	1 round per weapon
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 signals per weapon
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 signals per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	2 signals per platoon
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 rounds per weapon
BA16 Cartridge, 60mm HE M720A1 w/Multi-Op	16 rounds per section
B643 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M888	16 rounds per section
B647 Cartridge, 60mm Illuminating M721	12 rounds per section
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	4 rounds per weapon
C995 Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT	3 rockets per platoon
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	20 grenades per platoon
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	20 fuses per platoon
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	10 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
HA21 Rocket, 21mm Sub-Caliber, M72AS Trai	3 rockets per platoon
HA29 Rckt 66mm HE, M72A7, LAW W/GRAZE	3 rockets per platoon
FMPR Rocket, FOTS Multi-Purpose Round	1 rockets per section
FPTR Rocket, FOTS Practice Training Round	3 rockets per section
L305 SIGNAL , ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A	3 signals per platoon
L307 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon

L314 Signal, Illumination Ground Green St 3 signals per platoon  
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M 3 projectiles per platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range  
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range  
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17671 Field Artillery Indirect Fire Range  
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range  
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** This event can be augmented through use of DVTE and VBS2.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Amphibious raids will include detailed planning, coordination, and rehearsals with Navy and other designated personnel for the conduct of ship-to-shore surface or air movement. Specific procedures, requirements, factors, control measures, and expertise for specific amphibious insertion techniques will be required.
2. Range must support all company weapons and attached weapons, to include dud-producing ordnance and overhead fires.

---

**INF-MAN-6005:** Integrate Armor (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, an order, and a supporting or attached tank and/or mechanized unit.

**STANDARD:** To maximize maneuverability, speed, momentum, firepower, and shock effect to accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Integrate fires.
3. Conduct tactical logistics.
4. Coordinate communications.
5. Coordinate visual signal plan.
6. Conduct prep for combat ensuring tanks included in planning, rehearsals, and all confirmation briefs.
7. Execute command and control.
8. Designate targets based on capabilities and limitations.
9. Deconflict battle space geometry.
10. Provide security for tanks.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

INF-FSPT-5001                      INF-MAN-5005

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Additional considerations for tanks/mech in assembly areas, concerns for armor routes, threat, planning for team tank, team mech, or tank/dismounted infantry integration, routes, obstacles, environments, fuel, vehicle recovery, maintenance, communication plan, load plans, bump plans, signal plans, fire commands, mech and tank capabilities/limitations, movement along armor considerations, etc.
2. Planning should also include additional non-organic armor-infantry team fires.
3. Tanks can't carry personnel but they can carry ammo/equipment for dismounts.
4. Armor has significant logistical requirements

---

INF-MAN-6006: Clear an Area (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given supporting attachments operating in a MAGTF, Joint, Combined, and/or Interagency environment, a higher headquarters operations order, commander's guidance, and references.

STANDARD: To eliminate insurgent activity, cells and networks within an assigned area of operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct intelligence preparation of the operating environment (IPOE).
2. Task organize.
3. Establish command and control.
4. Integrate joint, coalition, host nation and interagency capabilities and organizations.
5. Exchange liaisons with joint, coalition, host nation and interagency organizations.
6. Provide service and joint capabilities to coalition, host nation and interagency organizations.
7. Establish Civil Military Operations Center.
8. Conduct intelligence, surveillance and reconnaissance (ISR) to develop intelligence on insurgent activity and the local population.
9. Establish control over the area of operations.

10. Control, direct, coordinate, approve, modify or deny employment of organic and supporting arms.
11. Establish detention facilities and conduct detainee operations.
12. Secure key terrain, infrastructure and individuals.
13. Kill or capture high value targets.
14. Commence detailed clearing of the objective area.
15. Complete actions on the objective.
16. Secure lines of communication leading into or out of the cleared area.
17. Implement population and resource control (PRC) measures.
18. Conduct targeting of remaining active insurgents.
19. Target insurgent support structures.
20. Target key individuals and organizations for engagement.
21. Disrupt insurgents outside of cleared area.
22. Conduct the full spectrum of information operations (PSYOP, MILDEC, OPSEC, EW, CNA).

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCIP 3-33.01 Small Unit Leaders Guide to Counterinsurgency
  2. MCRP 3-16.6B Fire Support Team (FIST) Techniques and Procedures
  3. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
  4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
  5. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
  6. MCWP 3-16.2 Procedures for the Marine Corps Fire Support
  7. MCWP 3-33.5 Counterinsurgency Operations
- 

**INF-MAN-6101:** Conduct a position defense (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, attachments, an order to conduct a deliberate or hasty defense, specified duration of the operation, and an area.

**STANDARD:** To deny the enemy access to designated terrain or infrastructure for a specified time.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Determine appropriate defensive technique.
3. Conduct planning.
4. Integrate attachments as required.
5. Integrate fires.
6. Conduct tactical logistics.
7. Prep for combat.
8. Occupy the defense.
9. Conduct linkup with adjacent forces as required.
10. Execute command and control.
11. Execute security plan.
12. Execute priorities of work.
13. Integrate least engaged unit into the defense as necessary.
14. Execute the scheme of maneuver and fire support plan.
15. Consolidate.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

INF-CSS-6001	0302-FSPT-2005	INF-INT-6003
INF-INT-6001	INF-C2-6009	INF-C2-6007
INF-C2-6003	INF-C2-6002	INF-C2-6001
0302-C2-2501	0302-C2-2004	0302-C2-2002
INF-FSPT-6006	INF-FSPT-6001	0302-CSS-2001

CHAINED EVENTS: INF-MAN-5101

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-16.6B Fire Support Team (FiST) Techniques and Procedures
2. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
5. MCWP 3-15.1 Machineguns and Machinegun Gunnery
6. MCWP 3-15.2 Tactical Employment of Mortars
7. MCWP 3-15.5 Anti-armor Operations
8. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
9. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	20 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	800 rounds per weapon
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	800 rounds per unit
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	120 rounds per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	800 rounds per weapon
A143 Cartridge, 7.62mm Ball M80 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A151 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball/1 Tracer Li	800 rounds per weapon
A358 Cartridge, 9mm TP-T M939 for AT-4 Tr	1 round per weapon
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 signals per weapon
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 signals per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	2 signals per platoon
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 rounds per weapon
BA16 Cartridge, 60mm HE M720A1 w/Multi-Op	32 rounds per section
B643 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M888	32 rounds per section
B647 Cartridge, 60mm Illuminating M721	24 rounds per section
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	4 rounds per weapon
C995 Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT	3 rockets per platoon
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	20 grenades per platoon
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	20 fuses per platoon
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	10 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
HA21 Rocket, 21mm Sub-Caliber, M72AS Trai	3 rockets per platoon
HA29 Rckt 66mm HE, M72A7, LAW W/GRAZE	3 rockets per platoon
FMPR Rocket, FOTS Multi-Purpose Round	1 rockets per section
FPTR Rocket, FOTS Practice Training Round	3 rockets per section
L305 SIGNAL , ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A	3 signals per platoon
L307 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon

L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St 3 signals per platoon  
L314 Signal, Illumination Ground Green St 3 signals per platoon  
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M 3 projectiles per platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course  
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range  
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live  
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** This event can be augmented through use of CACTUS.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Planning should include: forms of defense: sector, perimeter, linear, non-linear, reverse slope, defensive recon considerations, etc.
2. Integration of fires should include: Long range fires, close supporting fires, and final protective fires.
3. Security plan: should be commenced as early as possible, even during the leader's recon if able.

---

**INF-MAN-6102:** Conduct a mobile defense (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit with an order to defend a sector, attachments, equipment, and commander's guidance.

**STANDARD:** To achieve destruction of the enemy by allowing it to become vulnerable in its attack and then defeating it through decisive offensive action(s) by a striking force.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning, inspections, and preparation.
2. Task organize with a fixing force and a striking force that serves as a counterattack force.
3. Make reconnaissance and establish initial security.
4. Identify and mark primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.
5. Shape the battlespace such that the enemy force is canalized into the engagement area, has overextended its lines of communication, and is exposed to the counterattack by the striking force.
6. Initiate patrolling plan and improve security.
7. Identify, mark, and establish command posts.
8. Conduct work in accordance with priorities and timeline.
9. Establish and mark sectors of fire for subordinate, supporting, and attached units.
10. Establish fields of fire.
11. Coordinate and supervise at all levels to ensure effective employment of weapon systems, safety, and the geometry of fires.

12. Emplace obstacles.
13. Conduct the fire support/targeting process and ensure integration of direct and indirect fires and detail the plan to shift and/or cease fires as the striking force counterattacks into the enemy.
14. Register indirect fires.
15. Produce, receive, and forward fire plan sketches and range cards.
16. Rehearse the route of the striking force will use to counterattack the enemy.
17. Entrench and improve positions.
18. Establish communications and signals plan.
19. Establish and rehearse final protective fires, counterattack plan, and defensive battle drills.
20. Establish alert postures.
21. Conduct continuing actions.
22. Send and receive required reports.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

INF-CSS-6001	INF-FP-6005	INF-C2-6009
INF-FSPT-6001	INF-C2-6003	INF-C2-6002
INF-C2-6001	INF-C2-6007	

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
2. MCRP 3-16.6B Fire Support Team (FiST) Techniques and Procedures
3. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
4. MCWP 3-15.5 Anti-armor Operations
5. MCWP 3-16.2 Procedures for the Marine Corps Fire Support

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17560 Sniper Field-Fire Range  
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range  
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** This event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS.

---

**INF-MAN-6103:** Conduct Retrograde (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event applies to the three types of retrograde operations; Delay, Withdrawal, and Retirement.

**CONDITION:** Given a unit with supporting attachments operating in a MAGTF, Joint, Combined, and/or Interagency environment, a higher headquarters operations order, commander's guidance.

**STANDARD:** To conduct an organized movement to the rear away from the enemy.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Determine purpose of operation.
3. Disseminate commander's intent.
4. Conduct Fire support coordination.
5. Conduct continuous assessments of troop morale throughout retrograde in order to identify negative impact on combat effectiveness.
6. Establish tactical control measures (start points, contact points, passage lanes, passage points, release points) and coordinate with all units involved in the routes planned.
7. Arrange for reconnaissance of retrograde routes, time permitting.
8. Establish priorities for use of routes and resources.
9. When executing a withdrawal/delay, task organize for phased echeloning of forces disengagement and movement away from the enemy.
10. When executing a withdrawal/delay, consider employment of countermobility obstacles and fire support plan to prevent enemy's ability to maneuver on friendly forces.
11. Conduct continual coordination during movement to include marking/identification of unit's lead and rear trace.
12. Maintain all around security throughout the entire relief of units to include overwatch and fire support coverage using organic and supporting weapons systems.
13. Coordinate for displacement of ground based fire support assets.
14. Coordination conducted with higher headquarters and between passing units to limit enemy observation and awareness of retrograde.
15. Coordinate rear area operations displacement while maintaining the ability to handle prioritized responsibilities such as casualty handling, refueling, and ammunition distribution.
16. Send and receive required reports.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

INF-CSS-6001	INF-MAN-5102	INF-C2-6009
INF-FSPT-6001	INF-C2-6003	INF-C2-6001
INF-C2-6007		

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
2. MCRP 3-16.6B Fire Support Team (FiST) Techniques and Procedures
3. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
4. MCWP 3-16.2 Procedures for the Marine Corps Fire Support

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live  
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range  
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17560 Sniper Field-Fire Range  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range  
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range  
Facility Code 17830 Light Demolition Range  
Facility Code 17905 Mine Warfare Area

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Training for this event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. A retrograde operation is an organized movement to the rear away from the enemy. The force executes retrogrades to accomplish one or more of the following:
  - a. To disengage from combat.
  - b. To avoid combat under undesirable conditions.
  - c. To draw the enemy into an unfavorable situation.
  - d. To gain time without fighting a decisive engagement.
  - e. To place friendly forces in a more favorable position.
  - f. To permit the use of a portion of the force elsewhere.
2. There are three types of retrograde operations:
  - a. Delay, where the unit gives up space to gain time.
  - b. Withdrawal, where all or part of a deployed force voluntarily disengages from the enemy to free itself for a new mission.
  - c. Retirement, where a force not in contact with the enemy conducts movement to the rear.

---

INF-MAN-6201: Conduct Counter-IED (C-IED) Operations (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given supporting attachments operating in a MAGTF, Joint, Combined, and/or Interagency environment, a higher headquarters operations order, and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To target, attack and defeat threat networks in accordance with concept of operations and commanders intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct IPOE to identify threat networks operating in and around RCT/BN AOs.
2. Establish command and control.
3. Determine how the threat networks function as systems.
4. Determine desired effects, objectives and end state with respect to threat networks.
5. Develop a concept of operations to achieve desired end state.
6. Determine measures of effectiveness/performance (MOE/P).
7. Task organize for AtN operations.
8. Integrate host nation security and intelligence efforts into AtN operations.
9. Employ systematic all-source intelligence collection/analysis capabilities to identify and locate key threat cell structures.
10. Employ biometrics to facilitate targeting of threat cell members.
11. Implement population and resource control measures to isolate threat cells and deny freedom of movement.
12. Leverage Attack the Network enablers (see Note 2).
13. In conjunction with higher headquarters, track threat network activities.
14. Employ fused intelligence and analysis to support targeting.

15. Conduct integrated targeting against threat networks with higher, adjacent, subordinate and supporting organizations.
16. Target threat network popular support.
17. Target threat network command & control.
18. Target threat network cohesion.
19. Target threat network support structure.
20. Develop targeting packages and products.
21. Utilize Tactical Patience in the network targeting process.
24. Assess AtN operations using MOE/P.
22. Employ appropriate assets and fires to achieve desired effects against network targets, to include SOF and/or SOF-like capabilities.
23. Conduct sensitive site exploitation (SSE) and tactical site exploitation (TSE) to facilitate network targeting and identification of threat TTPs and capabilities.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCIP 3-17.02 MAGTF Counter-Improvised Explosive Device Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training for this event can be augmented through use of CCS, DVTE, and the IIT.

---

**INF-MAN-6202:** Conduct a tactical march (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a route with start point and release point, purpose, and commander's intent.

**STANDARD:** To complete movement along the prescribed route.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Specify the march route, order of march, formation, interval between units, and the individual load.
2. Inspect personnel for the proper load, equipment, and readiness to move.
3. Step off at the designated time.
4. Individuals maintain their prescribed position and interval in the unit formation, as specified in march order.
5. Follow prescribed route(s).
6. Maintain security that provides necessary indications and warning of enemy presence and actions (observation posts, overwatch, and/or use of forward, flank, and rear security with appropriate intervals).
7. Conduct halts in accordance with the unit SOP (as the tactical situation permits) to rest troops, adjust and redistribute equipment, and perform foot hygiene.
8. Leaders check the condition of all troops for foot marches.
9. Maintain local security during halts.
10. Use visual signals throughout the road march.
11. Send and receive required reports.
12. Arrive at the release point at the time specified.

REFERENCES:

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Maneuver/Training area
2. Close Air Support (CAS) aircraft/Forward Air Controller (FAC)
3. Training for this event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS.

---

INF-MAN-6203: Occupy an assembly area (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a unit that is conducting tactical operations in a MAGTF, Joint, Combined, and/or Interagency environment, a higher headquarters operations order, and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To prepare to conduct follow-on operations as directed.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Initial security/occupation plan is established and briefed to subordinate companies/units.
2. Conduct reconnaissance.
3. Quartering party identifies, marks, and secures tentative positions within the assembly area.
4. Units conduct movement to identified areas, guided by quartering party or other designated element(s).
5. Assign and occupy sectors that ensure mutual support and cover all gaps by observation and fire.
6. Establish COC.
7. Set and conduct priorities of work.
8. Refine security plan.
9. Coordinate with higher and adjacent units.
10. Send and receive required reports.

REFERENCES:

1. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

INF-MAN-6204: Conduct a relief in place (RIP) (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: As either the stationary or relieving unit, given supporting attachments operating in a MAGTF, Joint, Combined, and/or Interagency environment, a higher headquarters operations order, and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To ensure passage of tactical responsibilities, and control of a designated area with minimal disruption in operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning.
2. Conduct coordination between higher headquarters, both stationary and relieving unit, as well as all other supporting units and fire support agencies.
3. Employ all means to ensure common view of battle space and operations and passage of information, to include but not limited to: co-location of command groups and exchange of liaison personnel at all levels.
4. Exchange all required intelligence and tactical information.
5. Coordinate/identify when and where battle handover/passage of command will occur.
6. Provide an operations overlay and a copy of the fragmentary order to the relieving unit.
7. Conduct detailed coordination and liaison between representatives of fire support units in support of both units at the command post (CP)/combat operations center (COC) of the stationary unit.
8. Provide fire plan sketches or overlays to the relieving units.
9. Maintain security and communications at normal levels.
10. Conduct the movement of units over planned routes, based on the planned sequence of movement and relief.
11. Maintain noise and light discipline and the dispersion of forces throughout movement.
12. Use guides to lead relieving units into positions and to lead relieved units out of position.
13. Relieve local security units last.
14. Keep fire support assets in position throughout the relief of maneuver units. Ensure they are prepared to support both units.
15. Keep liaison personnel in position until the relieving unit has assumed control.
16. Ensure that at every level down to and including the individual Marine, face-to-face briefs are conducted.
17. Conduct familiarization and combined operations to ensure relieving unit readiness to assume mission, if applicable.
18. Relieve crew-served weapons personnel after rifle units.
19. Use assembly areas that provide cover and concealment and are large enough to allow for the dispersion of units.
20. Maintain all-around security throughout the entire relief of units.
21. Account for all personnel, supplies, and equipment.
22. Execute tactical deception during the relief.
23. Relinquish responsibility for the area upon agreement by the two commanders and after approval from the higher commander.
24. Send and receive required reports.

25. Coordinate the transfer or exchange of supplies and equipment to include: communications, wire lines, radio antennas, and petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL).

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
3. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training for this event can be augmented through use of DVTE and VBS2.

---

**INF-MAN-6205:** Conduct Gap Crossing (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Gap crossing includes both wet and dry gaps. It includes limited non-standard (timber rope) bridging.

**CONDITION:** Given supporting attachments operating in a MAGTF, Joint, Combined, and/or Interagency environment, a higher headquarters operations order, commander's guidance for a unit performing tactical operations, an obstacle that must be bridged, and bridging materials.

**STANDARD:** To provide an avenue of approach, lane, or means across a gap that will meet or exceed military load classification required to support the concept of operations in accordance with the commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Plan bridging operations.
2. Coordinate bridging operations.
3. Prepare the bridge sites.
4. Assemble the bridge.
5. Conduct engineer reconnaissance.
6. Disassemble the bridge.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
2. MCWP 3-17.1 Combined Arms Gap-Crossing Operations
3. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations
4. MCWP 3-17.8 Combined Arms Mobility Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17919 Timber Bridge Area  
Facility Code 17920 Panel Bridge Area

Facility Code 17921 Armored Vehicle Launch Bridge, Raft, And Ford Area  
Facility Code 17922 Floating Bridge Site

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Training for this event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS.

---

INF-MAN-6206: Conduct a Passage of Lines (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: As either the moving or stationary unit, given supporting attachments operating in a MAGTF, Joint, Combined, and/or Interagency environment, a higher headquarters operations order, and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To ensure the safety of all personnel involved.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning.
2. Conduct coordination between higher headquarters, both stationary and moving unit, as well as all other supporting units and fire support agencies.
3. Employ all means to ensure common view of battle space and operation and passage of information, to include but not limited to: co-location of command groups and exchange of liaison personnel at all levels.
4. Exchange all required intelligence and tactical information.
5. Establish graphic control measures (start points, contact points, passage lanes, passage points, release points) and coordinate with all units involved in the passage.
6. Coordinate/identify when and where battle handover/passage of command will occur.
7. Arrange for leader's reconnaissance of passage area and forward battle space by elements of the moving unit.
8. Stationary unit selects and marks passage lanes/points/areas, and positions personnel to guide moving unit.
9. Establish priorities for use of routes and resources.
10. The stationary unit controls/delivers supporting fires prior to, and until battle handover/passage of command.
11. Conduct continual coordination during movement and passage to include marking/identification of moving unit's lead and rear trace.
12. At identified release points, moving unit commanders re-assume control of their units.
13. Moving unit assumes responsibility for control of fires and battle space from stationary unit at the planned/coordinated time/place.
14. Coordination conducted with higher headquarters and between passing units to limit enemy observation and awareness of passage of lines.
15. Coordinate plan for casualty evacuation and detainee handling.
16. Send and receive required reports.

REFERENCES:

1. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**INF-MAN-6207:** Conduct a Linkup (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given an order, necessary equipment, a tentative linkup point identified by stationary unit; or a linkup point designated by higher headquarters to stationary and moving units, a linkup frequency, and considering the situation, unit capabilities, and time available.

**STANDARD:** To linkup with a friendly unit without fratricide.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning and coordination between units and with higher headquarters.
2. For moving unit: contact stationary unit leader/command post on pre-designated net and exchange critical information (linkup time, route of movement, number of personnel in linkup elements, confirm challenge/password, contingency plans, etc.).
3. For stationary unit: task an element to conduct the linkup, brief the element on all key information, and the element occupies an over watch position short of the linkup point before the designated linkup time.
4. For moving unit: halt a safe distance from the linkup point in a covered and concealed position (rally point) and establish security.
5. For moving unit: establish communications with the stationary unit.
6. For moving unit: designate linkup element, issue contingency plans to the main body, and move the element to the linkup point.
7. For moving unit: linkup element halts short of linkup point in a position that overwatches the linkup point.
8. For moving unit: initiate far recognition signals.
9. For stationary unit: acknowledge far recognition signal.
10. For moving unit: move unit leader to linkup point while the rest of the element maintains overwatch.
11. For moving unit: contact team conducts linkup with stationary unit, via near recognition signal (challenge/password), and conduct final coordination for movement of main body.
12. For moving unit: linkup element returns to main body and guides it to the linkup point as directed by the stationary unit. Stationary unit guides may be used.
13. For stationary unit: report linkup, and then guides the moving unit as required to complete the linkup.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCDP 1-3 Tactics
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
3. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Training for this event can be augmented through use of DVTE and VBS2.

---

INF-MAN-6208: Conduct obstacle breaching (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given supporting attachments operating in a MAGTF, Joint, Combined, and/or Interagency environment, a higher headquarters operations order, commander's guidance for a unit performing tactical operations, an obstacle that cannot be bypassed, and breaching materials.

STANDARD: To reduce the obstacle, move through the breach site, and continue the attack with minimal delay.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task organize.
2. Report presence of obstacle to higher.
3. Determination is made whether the lead maneuver element has the means to breach without support or requires additional support/reinforcement.
4. Conduct leader's reconnaissance and designate breach point(s).
5. Employ indirect and direct fires to suppress the enemy.
6. Employ obscuration smoke to conceal breach effort and movement.
7. Breach element(s) moves to the breach point(s) using available cover and concealment and conducts preparations for breach.
8. Post guides to and out of the breach to control movement of forces through the breach.
9. Barriers, wire, or other obstacles are reduced.
10. Proof and mark the lane.
11. Mark unexploded mines.
12. Element(s) clears the breach lane(s), conducts a limited assault/security beyond the breach.
13. Mark the route to the breach, the breach lane(s), and the route beyond the obstacle. If breach will be used at night (or limited visibility) mark accordingly.
14. Remove, destroy, or clearly mark all remaining mines.
15. After completion of initial assault, lane(s) are improved, or additional lanes are cleared and marked as required to support follow-on movement of battalion and follow-on forces.
16. Make a determination whether or not to have the breaching element remain as security for breach site or continue the attack. Other designated element/reserves move through and exploit the breach is applicable.
17. Follow-on support units move through the breach.
18. Send and receive reports as required.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
2. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
3. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
4. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad

5. MCWP 3-16.2 Procedures for the Marine Corps Fire Support
6. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
7. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17830 Light Demolition Range

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training for this event can be augmented through use of DVTE and VBS2.

---

**INF-MAN-6209:** Consolidate and reorganize (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a situation where the unit has reached an objective, arrived at a new position, repelled an enemy attack, established defensive positions following an attack, and the unit has been issued an order to consolidate and reorganize.

**STANDARD:** To prepare to defeat the enemy's counterattack, establish a deliberate defense, or continue the attack.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Establish initial security on most likely avenues of approach.
2. Establish priorities and commence work to improve positions and security.
3. Displace supporting arms/crew served weapons and reserves forward, to add strength and ensure continuous fire support.
4. Adjust initial positions as a result of the ground reconnaissance and changes in the enemy situation.
5. Process casualties.
6. Process detainees.
7. Redistribute personnel, supplies, and equipment to offset any losses/shortages, and conduct resupply as required.
8. Integrate the use of natural obstacles, and prepare barriers and man-made obstacles.
9. Position command and control to facilitate the conduct of future operations.
10. Plan for the use of the reserve.
11. Send and receive reports as required.
12. Begin preparation for future missions.
13. Ensure coordination with adjacent and supported units.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
3. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

---

INF-MAN-6210: Conduct Reserve Operations (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 18 months

CONDITION: Given supporting attachments operating in a MAGTF, Joint, Combined, and/or Interagency environment, a higher headquarters operations order, commander's guidance, and the task to serve as the reserve.

STANDARD: To be capable of providing reinforcement or relief to another decisively engaged unit.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task organize with the flexibility to reinforce or relieve the main effort or supporting efforts.
2. Maintain a state of readiness that allows for rapid employment.
3. Participate in the planning and rehearsal of the main effort and supporting effort.
4. Coordinate a link up plan in the event of employment.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Training for this event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS.

---

INF-MAN-6211: Support by fire/overwatch (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task to provide overwatch and support to a maneuvering element assaulting an enemy unit.

STANDARD: To provide direct and indirect fires that will allow a maneuvering element to close on and assault an objective occupied by an enemy unit.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Reconnoiter the tentative position and the routes to it.
2. Ensure the fire support plan will: Suppress enemy weapons systems that inhibit movement. Fix or neutralize bypassed enemy elements. Obscure enemy observation or screen friendly maneuver. The company can take advantage of smoke in various maneuver situations, such as during a bypass or in deception operations. Support breaching operations. Fires can obscure or suppress enemy elements that are overwatching reinforcing obstacles. They can also obscure or suppress enemy forces on an objective area during the conduct of an assault breach. Illuminate enemy positions. Illumination fires are always included in contingency plans for night attacks. Conduct SEAD (Suppress Enemy Air Defense)
3. Ensure the position provides observation of the objective and over watch of the assault element.
4. Ensure position enables the support element to place suppressive fire on the objective.
5. Assign positions, sectors of fire, and other fire control measures (TRP, FPL, rates of fire, target engagement criteria and priorities, etc.)
6. Maintains continuous communications with, and if possible, observation of the assault element and its route.
7. Alerts the assault element of any detected/observed enemy or changes in situation.
8. Initiates, lifts or shifts fire on signal or when the assault begins in accordance with standard operating procedures or operations order.
9. Coordinate for ammo resupply

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.27 MK19 40MM Grenade Machine Gun MOD 3
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machinegun, Caliber .50, HB M2
3. FM 3-22.68 Light and Medium machineguns
4. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
5. MCWP 3-11.2 Marine Rifle Squad
6. MCWP 3-15.1 Machineguns and Machinegun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range  
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live  
Facility Code 17671 Field Artillery Indirect Fire Range  
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range  
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Range will need to support battalion level attack. Range must support all company weapons and attached weapons, to include dud-producing ordnance and overhead fires.

---

**INF-MAN-6212:** Conduct Patrolling Operations (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a company with supporting attachments operating in a MAGTF, Joint, Combined, and/or Interagency environment, a higher headquarters operations order, commander's guidance, and references.

**STANDARD:** To coordinate, deconflict and execute patrolling operations in support of the scheme of maneuver to achieve the commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct inspections, rehearsals, and preparation.
2. Task organize.
3. Issue order.
4. Coordinate with adjacent, attached, and supporting units.
5. Occupy assembly area and conduct forward unit coordination.
6. Depart friendly lines.
7. Coordinate and conduct movement at specified times and along specified routes.
8. Conduct directed actions during the patrol.
9. Employ supporting arms as required.
10. Establish patrol base, if applicable.
11. Send and receive required reports.
12. Employ patrol battle drills for given situations.
13. Complete actions on the objective/mission requirements.
14. Conduct re-entry of friendly lines/extraction from patrolling area.
15. Conduct patrol debrief.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

INF-MAN-5304                      INF-MAN-5301                      INF-MAN-5302  
INF-MAN-5303

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** This event can be trained through use of the IIT.

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

**INF-MAN-6213:** Occupy a Patrol Base (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, equipment, a long-term mission, and commander's intent.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission and meet commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Patrol halts a sufficient distance from tentative patrol base.
2. Establish 360-degree security. The security team provides a contingency plan to the main body.
3. The security team reconnoiters the patrol base.
4. The security team checks the patrol base for suitability and to ensure no enemy is near.
5. A portion of the security team remains in the patrol base while the remainder returns to the main body.
6. The security team brings the rest of the unit forward.
7. The rear security element camouflages the trail from the security position to the patrol base.
8. Occupy the patrol base by deploying in a controlled manner and establishing a perimeter defense.
9. Use only one point of entry and exit.
10. Establish temporary observation posts. At a minimum, establish an observation post to observe the route the unit used to enter the patrol base.
11. Conduct reconnaissance to the limits of the unit's direct fire weapons to identify any signs of enemy activity, suitable observation post locations, possible rally points, withdrawal routes, and dead space.
12. Designate withdrawal routes, rally points, alternate patrol base, and observation post positions.
13. Conduct priorities of work.
14. Emplace early warning devices on avenues of approach.
15. Develop a fire plan sketch.
16. Establish communications with higher headquarters, OPs, and throughout the unit.
17. Send and receive required reports.
18. Permit only necessary movement within the patrol base.
19. Continuously enforce noise, light, camouflage discipline, and rest plan.
20. Conduct command post operations within the patrol base. Leaders in the patrol base continue to plan and prepare for the mission and units conduct patrols.
21. Establish an alternate patrol base that is occupied in the same manner as the primary patrol base.
22. After departure, remove or conceal all signs of the unit's presence.

CHAINED EVENTS: INF-MAN-5304

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)

---

INF-MAN-6214: Conduct a screen (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given the location/width of the screen, duration of the screen, location and disposition of the friendly force being screened, engagement and destruction criteria, displacement/disengagement criteria, and follow-on missions.

STANDARD: To provide early and accurate warning of an enemy, attrite his reconnaissance elements, and provide reaction time and maneuver space.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish successive screen lines to occupy as enemy pressure increases.
2. Establish OPs for surveillance of the area beyond the screen line.
3. Conduct movement from initial to subsequent screen lines.
4. Conduct patrols (mounted and dismounted) between OPs and in areas that cannot be observed, as the situation permits.
5. Detect and report all enemy forces in the unit sector before the enemy can engage the main body with direct fire.
6. Plan and execute fire support plan to deceive enemy into deploying main effort or to delay main body advance.
7. Avoid decisive engagement.
8. Maintain continuity of the screen and prevent the enemy reconnaissance elements from observing, reporting on, or controlling fires on the main body.
9. Attrite enemy reconnaissance elements.
10. Conduct movement/maneuver to keep pace on the flanks/rear of a moving main body, if applicable.
11. Execute casualty collection.
12. Send and receive reports as required.
13. Provide early and accurate warning and reaction time and maneuver space to the supported unit commander.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17560 Sniper Field-Fire Range  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range  
Facility Code 17610 Grenade Launcher Range  
Facility Code 17671 Field Artillery Indirect Fire Range  
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range  
Facility Code 17830 Light Demolition Range  
Facility Code 17905 Mine Warfare Area  
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

UNITS/PERSONNEL:

1. Artillery unit Note: If conducted as a live-fire event.
2. Close Air Support (CAS) aircraft/Forward Air Controller (FAC)

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Training for this event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS.

INF-MAN-6215: Participate in guard operations (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 18 months

CONDITION: Given the location/width of the guard area while participating as part of the guard force, duration of the mission, method of movement to and occupation, location and disposition of the friendly force being guarded, engagement and destruction criteria, displacement/disengagement criteria, follow-on missions.

STANDARD: To prevent the enemy's access to the supported unit's main body.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Move to the initial guard area using appropriate movement techniques.
2. Establish appropriate OPs for surveillance and local security.
3. Conduct patrols (mounted and dismounted) between OPs and in areas that cannot be observed, as the situation permits.
4. LP/OPs detect and report all enemy forces in the unit sector before the enemy can engage the main body with direct fire.
5. Plan and execute fire support plan to deceive enemy into deploying main effort or to delay main body advance.
6. Destroy enemy reconnaissance elements before they can observe, report, and control fires on the main body.
7. Prevent direct fires of the enemy from influencing the main body.
8. Gain and maintain contact with enemy as required.
9. Maintain communication with the protected force.
10. Reconnoiter the area between the protected force and the route of advance as required.
11. Send and receive reports as required.
12. Reconnoiter the route of advance as required.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Training for this event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS.

---

INF-MAN-6216: Conduct a cordon (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an order, a specified location, appropriate supporting personnel, and commander's intent.

**STANDARD:** To isolate an objective area to facilitate follow-on actions.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Initiate reconnaissance plan.
2. Conduct planning and coordination with higher, supporting, adjacent, and attached units.
3. Task organize.
4. Establish cordon and search battle drills.
5. Issue the order.
6. Establish inner and outer cordon around the search area/location and prevent movement into out of the area.
7. Maintain situational awareness of units and factors relative to the cordon and search.
8. Search site for personnel, weapons, equipment, or other contraband.
9. Send and receive required reports.
10. Employ battle drills, as necessary.
11. Execute the mission.
12. Conduct retrograde.
13. Conduct debrief.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCIP 3-33.01 Small Unit Leaders Guide to Counterinsurgency
2. MCRP 3-31.4B Multi-service Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Cordon and Search Operations
3. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
4. MCWP 3-33.5 Counterinsurgency Operations
5. BUST Handbook

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training for this event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS.

---

**INF-MAN-6217:** Employ Scout Snipers (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The company commander will incorporate the use of scout snipers to support his scheme of maneuver and intent. The company commander will provide a priority target list, engagement criteria, and destruction criteria for the snipers' use. The commander will receive and develop information on the enemy dispositions and transmit to higher/adjacent headquarters. The commander will support the forward placed teams with appropriate supporting arms and quick reaction force. Commander incorporates the team(s) into his intelligence gathering effort.

**CONDITION:** Given a mission, scout snipers as an attachment, and mission essential equipment.

26 Jul 2012

**STANDARD:** To support the scheme of maneuver and commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning, coordination, and prepare for combat.
2. Conduct intelligence preparation.
3. Establish task and purpose by phase of operation.
4. Establish information requirements.
5. Develop the fire support plan.
6. Designate tactical control measures.
7. Develop insert and extract plan, if applicable.
8. Establish quick reaction force/emergency extraction plan.
9. Conduct movement/actions at specified times, along specified routes, or in designated areas.
10. Provide priority target list, engagement criteria, and destruction criteria for the snipers' use.
11. Send and receive required reports.
12. Ensure readiness to support inserted teams with supporting arms and quick reaction force.
13. Determine best method to employ snipers in support of current mission (protect flanks, provide overwatch, direct fires in support of maneuver.
14. Develop a redundant communications plan.
15. Collect and report required information.
16. Determine logistical requirements and conduct resupply in a manner that will not compromise the sniper team(s).
17. Conduct debrief.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

INF-CSS-6001	INF-0317-5002	INF-0317-5001
INF-INT-6001	INF-FSPT-6001	INF-C2-6007
INF-C2-6003	INF-C2-6002	INF-C2-6001
INF-C2-6009		

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0317-COMM-2501	0317-COMM-2001	0317-OPS-2504
0317-OPS-2503	0317-OPS-2003	0317-OPS-2001
0317-TACT-2001	INF-MAN-5212	0317-MARK-2001
0317-OPS-2002		

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-15.3 Scout Sniping

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17560 Sniper Field-Fire Range  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training for this event can be augmented through use of DVTE and VBS2.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Factors to be considered during planning must include, but is not limited to: insertion methods, extraction methods, emergency extraction methods and criteria, and quick reaction force support of the sniper team(s).

---

INF-MAN-6218: Operate in Urban Terrain (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a mission to conduct operations in an urban environment.

STANDARD: To accomplish the mission while considering the unique characteristics, factors, and variables associated with an urban environment.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Begin planning.
2. Conduct appropriate pre-combat preparations, rehearsals, checks, and inspections.
3. Task organize for urban operations.
4. Coordinate with adjacent, supporting, and attached units.
5. Conduct reconnaissance.
6. Assess demographics/population factors.
7. Incorporate rules of engagement (ROE).
8. Develop fire support plan, tactical control measures, routes, and urban specific factors and restrictions.
9. Determine/coordinate key terrain labeling.
10. Conduct, coordinate, and complete the fire support/targeting process.
11. Conduct movement and tactics in the four levels of urban terrain (building, street, subterranean, and air).
12. Establish target precedence, consider effects for all weapon systems, and assess collateral damage.
13. Establish the signal/marketing plan.
14. Isolate the objective.
15. Control and direct organic and supporting arms.
16. Breach urban obstacles.
17. Gain a foothold in limited objectives.
18. Ensure weapons inside buildings have adequate space and ventilation for backblast (on upper floors, if possible, for long-range top shots).
19. Maintain situational awareness of units and factors relative to urban operations.
20. Conduct clearing and marking.
21. Complete actions on the objective.
22. Send and receive required reports.
23. Evacuate casualties, process detainees, and conduct logistic operations.
24. Issue fragmentary orders to units in preparation for follow-on missions.
25. Conduct continuous engagement/interaction with locals to support operations and gain actionable intelligence.

RELATED EVENTS:

INF-MOUT-7801

INF-MOUT-5803

INF-MOUT-5801

INF-MOUT-5814

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.2 Marine Rifle Squad
3. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
6. MCWP 3-15.3 Scout Sniping
7. MCWP 3-16.2 Procedures for the Marine Corps Fire Support

8. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility  
(Small)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. This task replaced "Conduct an urban attack" in the previous edition of the T&R. Additionally, urban defense, patrolling, movement to contact, and fire support tasks were deleted and incorporated into this task.

---

INF-MAN-6301: Participate in an amphibious assault (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an embarked unit, a mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning, coordination, and prepare for combat.
2. Conduct intelligence preparation.
3. Task organize.
4. Embark and conduct ship-to-shore movement.
5. Coordinate the use of direct and indirect fire weapons to facilitate movement to shore by engaging enemy positions.
6. Establish criteria for passage of control of fires ashore.
7. Position fire support ashore to maintain momentum of the assault.
8. Conduct actions on the objective.
9. Send and receive required reports.
10. Conduct link-up or relief-in-place with follow-on units.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

INF-CSS-6001	INF-INT-6001	INF-MAN-6302
INF-FSPT-6001	INF-C2-6003	INF-C2-6001
INF-C2-6009		

REFERENCES:

1. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
3. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
4. MCWP 3-31.6 Supporting Arms Coordination in Amphibious Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces  
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17908 Amphibious Vehicle Training Area

UNITS/PERSONNEL: Landing craft Note: AAVs, Small Craft, or other landing craft.

---

INF-MAN-6302: Conduct an amphibious raid (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, supported by AAV or small craft, acting separately or as part of a larger force, and an order.

STANDARD: To accomplish the mission, achieve commander's intent, and account for all personnel and equipment following the planned withdrawal.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task organize for the raid.
2. Conduct ship to shore movement.
3. Ensure security elements occupy designated positions to the flanks and rear of the unit and along avenues of approach to the objective.
4. Move support element to a covered and concealed position from which well-aimed fire can be placed on the objective.
5. Move assault element to the designated assault position.
6. Ensure support element is capable of providing fires in support of the assault element.
7. Plan indirect, suppressive, or obscuration fires on known and suspected enemy positions.
8. Ensure security element prevents enemy entry into or escape from the objective area.
9. Ensure assault element executes actions on the objective, consolidates, and reorganizes.
10. On order, the unit withdraws from the objective.
11. Conduct shore to ship movement as per the planned withdrawal.
12. Ensure personnel accountability prior to withdrawal.

REFERENCES:

1. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
5. MCWP 3-31.6 Supporting Arms Coordination in Amphibious Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17908 Amphibious Vehicle Training Area  
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading And Unloading Mockup  
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Amphibious maneuver and landing area2.  
Landing craft Note: AAVs, Small Craft, or other landing craft.

---

INF-MAN-6303: Participate in a Non-Combatant Evacuation Operation (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 18 months

CONDITION: Given an order to participate in or conduct a non-combatant evacuation operation as security and/or evacuation control center (ECC) operations.

STANDARD: To safely evacuate identified personnel to amphibious shipping or another safe haven.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning, coordination, and prepare for combat.
2. Conduct intelligence preparation.
3. Task organize.
4. Draw and issue specialized equipment/prepare ECC suite.
5. Conduct movement to the objective/evacuation site.
6. Conduct security and/or ECC operations.
7. Conduct liaison/coordination with Marine Security Guard, local security, and/or State Department personnel, as required.
8. React to public order disturbance, enemy action, or reports of evacuees at other locations.
9. Conduct retrograde.
10. Send and receive required reports.
11. Conduct debrief.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-68 Noncombatant Evacuation Operations
  2. MCWP 3-11.4 Helicopter Borne Operations
  3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
- 

INF-MAN-6401: Conduct civil military operations (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given supporting attachments operating in a MAGTF, Joint, Combined, and/or Interagency environment, a higher headquarters operations order, commander's guidance, and references.

STANDARD: To establish, maintain, influence, or exploit relations between military forces, governmental and nongovernmental civilian organizations and authorities, and the civilian populace to facilitate military operations and to achieve U.S. objectives.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct intelligence preparation of the Battlespace (IPB) including civil considerations (ASCOPE).
2. Task organize to support CMO.
3. Integrate civil considerations into all aspects of planning.
4. Establish interface (Civil-Military Operations Center - CMOC) with local host nation authorities, other US Governmental Agencies, non-governmental organizations, and civilian populace.
5. Identify local resources, public facilities, governing capacity and key

- leaders.
6. Identify the drivers (root causes) of instability by conducting local surveys and using other sources.
  7. Recommend activities and projects to address drivers of instability
  8. Provide recommendations to higher to develop indicators (measures of Performance and Measures of Effectiveness) to assess the impact of projects and activities.
  9. Conduct assessment and measure the impact of projects and activities against MOE's and MOP's.
  10. Conduct populace and resource control.
  11. Coordinate and synchronize Civil Military Operations and Information Operations.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

INF-CSS-6001	INF-INT-6001	INF-FP-6001
INF-C2-6009	INF-C2-6007	INF-FSPT-6001
INF-C2-6003	INF-C2-6002	INF-C2-6001
INF-FSPT-6004	INF-C2-6006	

**RELATED EVENTS:**

INF-MAN-5402	INF-MAN-5401	INF-MAN-6408
INF-MAN-6407	INF-MAN-6406	INF-MAN-6405
INF-C2-5003	INF-MAN-6403	INF-MAN-6402
INF-FP-5004	INF-FP-5003	INF-FP-6006
INF-FP-6005	INF-MAN-6404	

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-05.40 Civil Affairs Operations
2. FM 3-07 Stability Operations (2008)
3. JP 3-08 Interagency, Intergovernmental Organization, and Nongovernmental Organization Coordination during Joint Operations, Vol I and II
4. MCRP 3-33.1A Civil Affairs Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** This event can be trained through use of the IIT.

---

**INF-MAN-6402:** Support the establishment of civil control (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**CONDITION:** Given supporting attachments operating in a MAGTF, Joint, Combined, and/or Interagency environment, a higher headquarters operations order, and commander's guidance.

**STANDARD:** To protect the population and deny freedom of movement to the insurgents.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Secure lines of communication leading into and out of the cleared area.
2. Conduct a census.
3. Implement an Identification Card System (e.g. Biometrics).

4. Establish curfews.
5. Enforce a pass system.
6. Establish mechanisms and enforce limits on the length of time people can travel.
7. Establish mechanisms and enforce limits on the number of visitors from outside the cleared area combined with a requirement to register them with local security forces or civil authorities.
8. Establish checkpoints along major routes to monitor and enforce compliance with population control measures.
9. Establish control over key resource storage and distribution sites (water, fuel, food).

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

INF-CSS-6001	INF-INT-6001	INF-FP-6001
INF-C2-6009	INF-C2-6007	INF-FSPT-6001
INF-C2-6003	INF-C2-6002	INF-C2-6001
INF-FSPT-6004	INF-C2-6006	

**RELATED EVENTS:**

INF-INT-5002	INF-FP-6005	INF-MAN-6408
INF-MAN-6407	INF-MAN-5402	INF-MAN-5401
INF-MAN-6406	INF-MAN-6405	INF-MAN-6404
INF-MAN-6403	INF-MAN-6401	INF-FP-5004
INF-FP-5003	INF-FP-6006	INF-INT-5001

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-05.40 Civil Affairs Operations
2. FM 3-07 Stability Operations (2008)
3. JP 3-08 Interagency, Intergovernmental Organization, and Nongovernmental Organization Coordination during Joint Operations, Vol I and II
4. MCRP 3-33.1A Civil Affairs Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** This event can be trained through use of the IIT.

---

**INF-MAN-6403:** Support the restoration of essential services (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**CONDITION:** Given supporting attachments operating in a MAGTF, Joint, Combined, and/or Interagency environment, a higher headquarters operations order, and commander's guidance.

**STANDARD:** To restore local capacity and promote a stable secure environment.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify critical essential services infrastructure (sewage, water, electricity, academics, trash, medical, safety, and other considerations (SWEAT-MSO)).
2. Assess impact of essential services on operations and public order.
3. Support the security of essential services processes and facilities.

4. Establish mechanisms to assist in the prioritization for the creation/restoration of essential services
5. Advise local authorities on essential services.
6. Transition essential services to civil control.
7. Conduct intelligence preparation of the operating environment (IPOE).
8. Identify local government/political/tribal/religious/ethnic organizations and key leaders.
9. Assess local governance capacity and limitations.
10. Integrate with higher and adjacent governance plans.
11. Plan and synchronize governance support with local authorities, other US Governmental Agencies, non-governmental organizations, International organizations.
12. Establish Civil Military Operation Centers (CMOC).
13. Identify, secure, rehabilitate, and maintain basic facilities for local government.
14. Support the restoration of essential local public services.
15. Facilitate linkages to and support from national government.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

INF-CSS-6001	INF-FP-6001	INF-C2-6009
INF-C2-6007	INF-C2-6001	INF-C2-6005
INF-C2-6003	INF-C2-6002	INF-C2-6006

**RELATED EVENTS:**

INF-MAN-5402	INF-MAN-5401	INF-MAN-6408
INF-MAN-6407	INF-MAN-6401	INF-MAN-6405
INF-MAN-6404	INF-MAN-6402	INF-MAN-6406

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-05.40 Civil Affairs Operations
2. FM 3-07 Stability Operations (2008)
3. JP 3-08 Interagency, Intergovernmental Organization, and Nongovernmental Organization Coordination during Joint Operations, Vol I and II
4. MCRP 3-33.1A Civil Affairs Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures

---

**INF-MAN-6404:** Support local governance (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**CONDITION:** Given supporting attachments operating in a MAGTF, Joint, Combined, and/or Interagency environment, a higher headquarters operations order, and commander's guidance.

**STANDARD:** To expand local capacity and promote a stable, secure environment.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Establish a secure environment.
2. Assess local governance capacity, limitations and employment considerations.
3. Coordinate security and life support requirements in support of local civil authorities operating in the battle space.
4. Identify the needs of the local civil authorities in terms of security, economics, education and public information, food and agriculture,

- governance, health and welfare, infrastructure, and rule of law.
5. Identify the root causes of instability.
  6. Identify high impact/quick return projects which contribute towards resolving the root causes of instability and develop local capacity.
  7. Develop a campaign plan to resolve or mitigate the root causes of instability and support the development of local capacity.
  8. Assist local authorities in controlling military and police activities.
  9. Assist in establishing and enforcing the rule of law.
  10. Advise local host nation authorities on public administration.
  11. Assist in the development of a Justice system (a judiciary system, prosecutor/defense representation, and corrections).
  12. Facilitate the execution of civil information responsibilities.
  13. Perform liaison functions between local military and civilian agencies.
  14. Coordinate and synchronize activities of other government agencies involved in establishing civil control.
  15. Assist in the mediation of problems arising from the temporary cessation of normal local governmental functions.
  16. Support post-conflict elections.
  17. Assist in the development of disaster preparedness and response.
  18. Transition local governance to legitimate HN authority.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

INF-CSS-6001	INF-INT-6001	INF-C2-6009
INF-C2-6007	INF-FSPT-6001	INF-C2-6005
INF-C2-6003	INF-C2-6001	INF-FSPT-6004
INF-C2-6006		

**RELATED EVENTS:**

INF-MAN-5402	INF-MAN-5401	INF-MAN-6408
INF-MAN-6407	INF-MAN-6401	INF-MAN-6405
INF-MAN-6403	INF-MAN-6402	INF-MAN-6406

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-05.40 Civil Affairs Operations
2. FM 3-07 Stability Operations (2008)
3. JP 3-08 Interagency, Intergovernmental Organization, and Nongovernmental Organization Coordination during Joint Operations, Vol I and II
4. MCRP 3-33.1A Civil Affairs Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
5. NSPD-44 Management of Interagency Efforts Concerning Reconstruction and Stabilization
6. USAID Field Operations Guide, dtd 2005

---

**INF-MAN-6405:** Support economic development (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**CONDITION:** Given supporting attachments operating in a MAGTF, Joint, Combined, and/or Interagency environment, a higher headquarters operations order, and commander's guidance, with an established CMOC.

**STANDARD:** To expand local capacity and promote a stable, secure environment.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct intelligence preparation of the operating environment (IPOE).
2. Assess local economy and employment rates IOT determine the impact of economics on operations.
3. Assess the impact of operations on local economics.
4. Monitor and support economic initiatives implemented by local authorities, other US governmental agencies, non-governmental organizations, and international organizations.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

INF-CSS-6001	INF-INT-6001	INF-C2-6009
INF-C2-6007	INF-C2-6006	INF-FSPT-6001
INF-C2-6003	INF-C2-6002	INF-C2-6001
INF-FSPT-6004	INF-C2-6005	

**RELATED EVENTS:**

INF-MAN-6407	INF-MAN-6406	INF-MAN-6404
INF-MAN-5401	INF-MAN-6402	INF-MAN-6401
INF-MAN-5402	INF-MAN-6403	

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-05.40 Civil Affairs Operations
2. FM 3-07 Stability Operations (2008)
3. JP 3-08 Interagency, Intergovernmental Organization, and Nongovernmental Organization Coordination during Joint Operations, Vol I and II
4. MCRP 3-33.1A Civil Affairs Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures

---

**INF-MAN-6406:** Restore civil security (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, and a mission with commander's intent.

**STANDARD:** To contain or quell the situation in accordance with commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct appropriate pre-combat preparations, rehearsals, checks, and inspections.
2. Task organize.
3. Conduct reconnaissance and intelligence preparation of the battle space (IPB), if applicable.
4. Request and distribute specialized equipment and PPE.
5. Identify restraints/constraints with regard to detainee handling and other mission-particular factors.
6. Identify and prioritize key facilities/area to be protected.
7. Incorporate local and civil authorities into planning, preparation, and execution, if applicable.
8. Minimize collateral damage.
9. Establish a media/public affairs plan.
10. Establish teams in over watch.
11. Conduct public order operations, to include, but not limited to: augmenting civil authority security forces, protecting key installations,

- riot control, removing unlawful obstructions, or dispersing an unlawful assembly.
12. When operating in support of local security forces/police, exchange liaison personnel and co-locate command posts.
  13. Identify and position a quick reaction force to reinforce/support as required.
  14. Escalate force as necessary to achieve control.
  15. Employ non-lethal weapons (when available) to reduce collateral damage and injury to civilians, while simultaneously ensuring readiness to apply lethal force if required.
  16. Send and receive required reports.

**RELATED EVENTS:**

INF-CSS-6001	INF-FSPT-6001	INF-MAN-6408
INF-MAN-6407	INF-MAN-6405	INF-MAN-6404
INF-MAN-6403	INF-MAN-6402	INF-MAN-6401
INF-MAN-5402	INF-MAN-5401	INF-C2-6009
INF-C2-6007	INF-C2-6006	INF-C2-6005
INF-C2-6003	INF-C2-6002	INF-C2-6001
INF-INT-6001		

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-05.40 Civil Affairs Operations
2. FM 3-07 Stability Operations (2008)
3. MCRP 3-33.1A Civil Affairs Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures

---

**INF-MAN-6407:** Train and mentor foreign personnel (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 24 months

**CONDITION:** Given supporting attachments operating in a MAGTF, Joint, Combined, and/or Interagency environment, a higher headquarters operations order, and commander's guidance.

**STANDARD:** To enhance the effectiveness of foreign security forces in conducting operations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Determine method for advising foreign military forces (embedded training team or unit partnership).
2. Identify personnel and equipment requirements for advisor staff.
3. Screen advisors.
4. Provide relevant training to advisors.
5. Ensure adequate force protection for advisors.
6. Develop support/manning/supply plans in support of advisory team.
7. Develop plan for information sharing.
8. Develop campaign plan for military partnering, coordination measures, and transfer of authority as required.
9. Select and conduct missions and tasks to build successes/confidence.
10. Conduct after action reviews.
11. Identify potential leaders.

**CHAINED EVENTS:** INF-MAN-5402

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-07 Stability Operations (2008)
2. MCIP 3-33.01 Small Unit Leaders Guide to Counterinsurgency
3. MCWP 3-33.5 Counterinsurgency Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: This event can be trained through use of the IIT.

---

INF-MAN-6408: Hold an area (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 18 months

CONDITION: Given supporting attachments operating in a MAGTF, Joint, Combined, and/or Interagency environment, a higher headquarters operations order, and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To separate the insurgents from the populace and deny them safe haven.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct intelligence preparation of the operating environment (IPOE).
2. Establish command and control.
3. Task organize for combined operations with HN security organizations.
4. Integrate joint, coalition, host nation and interagency capabilities and organizations.
5. Exchange liaisons with joint, coalition, host nation and interagency organizations.
6. Provide service and joint capabilities to coalition, interagency and host nation organizations.
7. Maintain a Civil Military Operations Center.
8. Maintain a persistent intelligence, surveillance and reconnaissance (ISR) capability to develop intelligence on insurgent activity.
9. Control, direct, coordinate, approve, modify or deny employment of organic and supporting arms.
10. Conduct combined action where feasible.
11. Assign combined forces geographic responsibility where feasible.
12. Transition U.S. positions, checkpoints and responsibilities to combined forces where feasible.
13. Conduct combined/HN civil military operations.
14. Transition detention facilities and the conduct of detainee operations.
15. Kill or capture high value targets.
16. Transition responsibility for securing lines of communication leading into or out of the cleared area.
17. Modify population and resource control measures as appropriate.
18. Conduct targeting of remaining active insurgents.
19. Target insurgent support structures.
20. Target key individuals and organizations for engagement.
21. Disrupt insurgents outside of the cleared area.
22. Conduct the full spectrum of information operations (PSYOP, MILDEC, OPSEC, EW, CNA).
23. Minimize U.S. presence and promote local HN security organizations.

24. Assign HN security forces geographic responsibility where feasible.
25. Transition combined positions, checkpoints and responsibilities to HN forces where feasible.
26. Provide selective access to coalition enablers.
27. Transition population and resource control measures to HN authority.
28. Transition all security responsibilities to HN forces and authority when HN security and governance capacity is proven capable of managing internal threats to stability.

**CHAINED EVENTS:** INF-MAN-5401

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-07 Stability Operations (2008)
2. MCIP 3-33.01 Small Unit Leaders Guide to Counterinsurgency
3. MCWP 3-33.5 Counterinsurgency Operations

---

**INF-TRNG-6001:** Manage training (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given an approved Mission Essential Task List (METL) and Mission Statement, commander's training guidance, and a training plan.

**STANDARD:** Implement Unit Readiness Planning to achieve mission assigned task proficiency.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify collective training standards and individual training standards to support Battalion METL and training plan.
2. Determine unit proficiency.
3. Develop training strategy in concert with the Bn training plan and Commander's training guidance.
4. Develop a short range training plan.
5. Develop weekly training schedules.
6. Coordinate unit training.
7. Develop Training Materials.
8. Conduct Operational Risk Assessment.
9. Conduct Training.
10. Conduct formal/informal training evaluations.
11. Conduct after-action reviews.
12. Conduct Assessment.

**CHAINED EVENTS:** INF-TRNG-5001

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
2. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
3. MCRP 5-12.1C Risk Management (Feb 01)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** This event can be trained through use of the IIT.

---

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 6

PLATOON/SECTION COLLECTIVE EVENTS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE. . . . .	6000	6-2
EVENT CODING . . . . .	6001	6-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY . . . . .	6002	6-2
INDEX OF PLATOON/SECTION COLLECTIVE EVENTS . . . . .	6003	6-3
PLATOON/SECTION COLLECTIVE EVENTS. . . . .	6004	6-4

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 6

PLATOON/SECTION COLLECTIVE EVENTS

**6000. PURPOSE.** This chapter contains collective training events for the Infantry Occupational Field.

**6001. EVENT CODING.** Events in this T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12-character, 3-field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one. This field represents the community. This chapter contains the following community codes:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
INF	Infantry

b. Field two. This field represents the functional/duty area. This chapter contains the following functional/duty areas:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
0317	Scout Sniper
ANTI	Anti-Armor
ASLT	Assault
C2	Command and Control
CSS	Combat Service Support
FP	Force Protection
FSPT	Fire Support
INT	Intelligence
MAN	Maneuver
MGUN	Machineguns
MORT	Mortars
TRNG	Training

c. Field three. This field provides the level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing of events. This chapter contains the following event levels:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
5000	Platoon/Section Level

**6002. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY**

1. Collective training events build on individual training events which are trained in the formal schools and maintained by the small unit leaders in the Operational Forces (OPFOR).

2. Many collective events must occur simultaneously in order to allow the larger unit to accomplish its mission. This chapter will assist leaders and commanders in determining their piece in the larger whole and focus resources

on standards based training and stagger event training throughout an annual training plan based on the training interval established for each event.

6003. INDEX OF PLATOON/SECTION COLLECTIVE EVENTS

EVENT CODE	E-CODED	EVENT	PAGE
<b>SCOUT SNIPER</b>			
INF-0317-5001		Employ a Sniper Control Center (SCC) (B)	6-4
INF-0317-5002		Conduct sniper platoon operations (D)	6-5
<b>ANTI-ARMOR</b>			
INF-ANTI-5001		Provide offensive fires (B)	6-6
INF-ANTI-5002		Provide defensive fires (B)	6-8
INF-ANTI-5003		Conduct Motorized Operations (D)	6-9
<b>ASSAULT</b>			
INF-ASLT-5001		Provide direct fires (B)	6-11
INF-ASLT-5002		Occupy firing positions (B)	6-12
INF-ASLT-5003		Provide mobility (B)	6-13
INF-ASLT-5004		Provide counter-mobility (D)	6-14
<b>COMMAND AND CONTROL</b>			
INF-C2-5001		Conduct planning (B)	6-15
INF-C2-5002		Prepare for combat (B)	6-16
INF-C2-5003		Integrate enablers (B)	6-17
INF-C2-5004		Execute command and control (B)	6-17
<b>COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT</b>			
INF-CSS-5001		Conduct tactical logistics (B)	6-18
<b>FORCE PROTECTION</b>			
INF-FP-5001		Conduct Force Protection (D)	6-19
INF-FP-5002		Operate in a CBRN Threat Environment (D)	6-19
INF-FP-5003		Operate an entry control point (D)	6-20
INF-FP-5004		Operate a traffic control point (D)	6-21
<b>FIRE SUPPORT</b>			
INF-FSPT-5001		Integrate fires (A)	6-22
<b>INTELLIGENCE</b>			
INF-INT-5001		Conduct information collections (D)	6-23
INF-INT-5002		Conduct Tactical Site Exploitation (TSE) (D)	6-24
<b>MANEUVER</b>			
INF-MAN-5001		Conduct a ground attack (D)	6-25
INF-MAN-5002		Conduct a movement to contact (D)	6-27
INF-MAN-5003		Conduct a helicopter-borne/tiltrotor-borne attack (B)	6-29
INF-MAN-5004		Conduct a raid (B)	6-31
INF-MAN-5005		Integrate Armor (D)	6-33
INF-MAN-5101		Conduct a position defense (D)	6-34
INF-MAN-5102		Conduct a retrograde (B)	6-36
INF-MAN-5201		Conduct assembly area actions (D)	6-37
INF-MAN-5202		Conduct a relief in place (D)	6-38
INF-MAN-5203		Conduct a passage of lines (D)	6-39
INF-MAN-5204		Conduct a linkup (D)	6-40
INF-MAN-5205		Breach an obstacle (B)	6-41
INF-MAN-5206		Conduct consolidation (D)	6-42
INF-MAN-5207		Support by fire/overwatch (B)	6-42
INF-MAN-5208		React to a meeting engagement (B)	6-44
INF-MAN-5209		Conduct a cordon and search (B)	6-45

INF-MAN-5210		Detain personnel (D)	6-47
INF-MAN-5211		Conduct casualty evacuation (D)	6-48
INF-MAN-5212		Employ Scout Snipers (D)	6-48
INF-MAN-5301		Conduct patrolling operations (D)	6-49
INF-MAN-5302		Conduct a combat patrol (D)	6-51
INF-MAN-5303		Conduct a reconnaissance patrol (D)	6-52
INF-MAN-5304		Operate from a patrol base (D)	6-54
INF-MAN-5401		Retain a cleared area (D)	6-55
INF-MAN-5402		Train foreign forces (D)	6-56
<b>MACHINEGUNS</b>			
INF-MGUN-5001		Provide offensive fires (D)	6-57
INF-MGUN-5002		Provide defensive fires (D)	6-58
INF-MGUN-5003		Occupy firing positions (D)	6-60
INF-MGUN-5004		Conduct motorized operations (D)	6-61
<b>MORTARS</b>			
INF-MORT-5001		Provide indirect fires (B)	6-62
INF-MORT-5002		Occupy a mortar position (D)	6-63
INF-MORT-5003		Fire standard missions as a mortar section/platoon (B)	6-64
INF-MORT-5004		Fire special missions as a mortar section/platoon (B)	6-65
INF-MORT-5005		Perform reciprocal lay using the mortar sight (D)	6-67
INF-MORT-5006		Lay mortars using a M2 Aiming Circle (D)	6-67
INF-MORT-5007		Operate by split platoon (D)	6-68
<b>TRAINING</b>			
INF-TRNG-5001		Conduct unit readiness planning (D)	6-69

**6004. PLATOON/SECTION COLLECTIVE EVENTS**

**INF-0317-5001:** Employ a Sniper Control Center (SCC) (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tactical scenario, SCC location, communications equipment, report formats, and other necessary equipment and personnel.

**STANDARD:** To direct team operations, collect, process, analyze, and disseminate information from the scout sniper teams and conduct battle tracking procedures.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Establish SCC location.
2. Set up SCC in organized, efficient process.
3. Maintain effective communications with sniper teams.
4. Post correct information on status boards and charts.
5. Brief information updates as needed.
6. Maintain communication/log and journals.
7. Advise, process, report/relay, and disseminate information from and to sniper teams.
8. Coordinate between sniper teams and affected units.
9. Coordinate use of the SCC with a higher headquarter command post.
10. Debrief teams.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

0317-OPS-2503                    0317-OPS-2504

CHAINED EVENTS:

INF-0317-3001                    INF-0317-5002

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-05.222 U.S. Army Special Forces Sniper Training and Employment
2. MCRP 3-40.3B Radio Operator's Handbook
3. MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations
4. MCWP 3-15.3 Scout Sniping

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Training for this event can be augmented through use of MTWS.

---

INF-0317-5002: Conduct sniper platoon operations (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a sniper platoon, an operations order, table of equipment, and an area of operations.

STANDARD: To provide surveillance, fires, reports, and precision engagements as required on the objective without being compromised.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Execute departure of friendly lines.
2. Establish security.
3. Utilize patrolling techniques.
4. Continuously camouflage.
5. Navigate to the objective area using patrolling techniques.
6. Occupy position.
7. Observe and report.
8. Execute precision fires as required.
9. Observe/Adjust supporting arms as required.
10. Withdraw from position.
11. Execute re-entry of friendly lines/adjacent unit linkup.
12. Conduct debrief.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

0317-OPS-2504	0317-OPS-2004	0317-OPS-2003
0317-PAT-2001	0317-OPS-2001	0317-TACT-2001
0317-PAT-2002	0317-OPS-2002	

CHAINED EVENTS:

INF-0317-3003	INF-0317-5001	INF-0317-3001
INF-0317-3002		

RELATED EVENTS:

0317-TACT-1003	INF-0317-4901	INF-0317-4902
INF-0317-3903		

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
2. MCWP 3-15.3 Scout Sniping

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	2
A606 Cartridge, Caliber .50 API MK211 Mod	2
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	2

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17560 Sniper Field-Fire Range

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Training areas used for blank firing when observers are used on objective.
2. Sniper unknown distance live fire range (1,000 meters, 7.62 LR batwing SDZ and steel targets), used for live fire after personnel have been cleared from objective.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task can be trained to standard without ammunition.

---

INF-ANTI-5001: Provide offensive fires (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an order, and a supported unit scheme of maneuver, while operating in the full range of environmental conditions.

STANDARD: To support the unit's scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Conduct tactical logistics.
4. Prepare for combat operations.
5. Plan for diversions.
6. Conduct movement.
7. Occupy cold/hot firing positions.
8. Identify target by precedence.
9. Engage targets.
10. Improve positions as necessary.
11. Execute screening/signal plan.
12. Determine effects on target(s).
13. Re-engage target(s) as necessary.
14. Displace units as necessary.
15. Consolidate.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0352-LEAD-2001	0352-MAW-1001	0352-EMPL-1001
0352-EMPL-2003	0352-EMPL-2002	0352-EMPL-2001
INF-ANTI-4001	0352-MOBL-1001	0352-MOBL-2001
0352-HAW-1003	0352-HAW-1004	0352-HAW-1002
0352-HAW-1001	0352-HAW-1010	0352-HAW-1009
0352-HAW-1008	0352-HAW-1006	0352-HAW-1005
INF-FSPT-4001	0352-MAW-1005	0352-MAW-1004
0352-MAW-1003	0352-MAW-1002	0352-EMPL-1002

RELATED EVENTS:

INF-MAN-4204	INF-MAN-4001	INF-MAN-5207
INF-MAN-5203	INF-MAN-5201	INF-FSPT-5001
INF-MAN-5101	INF-MAN-5002	INF-MAN-5001
INF-ANTI-4003	INF-ANTI-5003	INF-MAN-5102

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-21.91 Tactical Employment of Anti-armor Platoons, Companies and Battalions
2. FM 3-22.34 TOW Weapon System
3. FM 3-22.37 Javelin Medium Anti-armor Weapon System
4. TM 09397B-12/1 Operator and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Javelin
5. TM 11581A-OR Operator and Organizational Maintenance Manual for M41 Saber System
6. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
7. TM 9-1425-923-12 Saber System (Improved Target Acquisition System) M41A
8. TM 9-2320-387-10 Operator Maintenance Manual for Truck; Utility: Cargo/Troop Carrier, 2-1/4 Ton, 4X4

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>		<u>Quantity</u>
PM93	Guided Missile, Surface Attack (Jave	1 missiles per platoon
WH03	BGM-71D-5, Guided Missile, Surface A	1 missiles per platoon
WH05	Guided Missile, BTM-71D-3B (TOW-1 Pr	1 missiles per platoon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17640 Antiarmor Tracking And Live-Fire Range

EQUIPMENT:

1. M220E4 TOW weapon system.
2. M41A4 Saber system.
3. M98A2 Javelin medium anti-armor weapon.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Training for this event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This covers offense, patrolling, mounted and dismounted operations. Actions on the objective may include execution of engagement criteria, application of target precedence, completion of range cards, fortification of positions, integration of fires with obstacles, etc. This event includes fires that are direct by line of sight or through concealment.

2. The full range of environmental conditions includes daylight, limited visibility, urban, rural, littoral, arctic, jungle, mountain, etc. Mounted or dismounted/ground mounted.

---

INF-ANTI-5002: Provide defensive fires (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an order, and a supported unit scheme of maneuver, while operating in the full range of environmental conditions.

STANDARD: To support the unit's scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Conduct tactical logistics.
4. Prepare for combat operations.
5. Plan for diversions.
6. Conduct movement.
7. Occupy cold/hot firing positions.
8. Provide continuous observation.
9. Provide far target location.
10. Identify target by precedence.
11. Engage targets.
12. Improve positions as necessary.
13. Execute screening/signal plan.
14. Determine effects on target(s).
15. Re-engage target(s) as necessary.
16. Displace units as necessary.
17. Consolidate.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0352-LEAD-2001	0352-MAW-1001	0352-EMPL-1002
0352-EMPL-1001	0352-EMPL-2003	0352-EMPL-2002
0352-EMPL-2001	INF-ANTI-4002	0352-MOBL-2001
0352-MOBL-1001	0352-HAW-1006	0352-HAW-1005
0352-HAW-1004	0352-HAW-1003	0352-HAW-1002
0352-HAW-1001	0352-HAW-1010	0352-HAW-1009
0352-HAW-1008	0352-MAW-1005	0352-MAW-1004
0352-MAW-1003	0352-MAW-1002	0352-EMPL-1003

RELATED EVENTS:

INF-MAN-4202	INF-MAN-4201	INF-MAN-4101
INF-MAN-5401	INF-MAN-5203	INF-MAN-5202
INF-FSPT-5001	INF-MAN-5102	INF-MAN-5101
INF-ANTI-4003	INF-ANTI-5003	INF-FSPT-4001
INF-MAN-5201		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-21.91 Tactical Employment of Anti-armor Platoons, Companies and Battalions
2. FM 3-22.34 TOW Weapon System

3. FM 3-22.37 Javelin Medium Anti-armor Weapon System
4. TM 09397B-12/1 Operator and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Javelin
5. TM 11581A-OR Operator and Organizational Maintenance Manual for M41 Saber System
6. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
7. TM 9-1425-923-12 Saber System (Improved Target Acquisition System) M41A
8. TM 9-2320-387-10 Operator Maintenance Manual for Truck; Utility: Cargo/Troop Carrier, 2-1/4 Ton, 4X4

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
PM93 Guided Missile, Surface Attack (Jave	1 missiles per platoon
WH03 BGM-71D-5, Guided Missile, Surface A	1 missiles per platoon
WH05 Guided Missile, BTM-71D-3B (TOW-1 Pr	1 missiles per platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17640 Antiarmor Tracking And Live-Fire Range

**EQUIPMENT:**

1. M220E4 TOW weapon system.
2. M41A4 Saber system.
3. M98A2 Javelin medium anti-armor weapon.

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training for this event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This covers defense, mounted and dismounted operations. Actions on the objective may include execution of engagement criteria, application of, completion of range cards, fortification of positions, integration of fires with obstacles, etc. This event includes fires that are direct by line of sight or through concealment.
2. The full range of environmental conditions includes daylight, limited visibility, urban, rural, littoral, arctic, jungle, mountain, etc. Mounted or dismounted/ground mounted.

---

**INF-ANTI-5003:** Conduct Motorized Operations (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given an order, and a supported unit scheme of maneuver, while operating in the full range of environmental conditions.

**STANDARD:** To support the unit's scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Prepare for combat operations.
2. Conduct traveling.

3. Conduct traveling overwatch.
4. Conduct bounding overwatch.
5. Conduct immediate actions.
6. Conduct down vehicle and recovery operations.
7. Conduct convoy security/escort.
8. Conduct link up/passage of lines.
9. Conduct route reconnaissance.
10. Conduct screening.
11. Conduct consolidation.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0352-LEAD-2001	0352-MAW-1001	0352-EMPL-2002
0352-EMPL-2001	0352-EMPL-1002	INF-ANTI-4003
0352-MOBL-2001	0352-MOBL-1001	0352-HAW-1010
0352-HAW-1009	0352-HAW-1008	0352-HAW-1006
0352-HAW-1005	0352-HAW-1004	0352-HAW-1003
0352-HAW-1002	0352-HAW-1001	0352-EMPL-2003

**RELATED EVENTS:**

INF-ANTI-4002	INF-ANTI-5001	INF-ANTI-5002
INF-ANTI-4001		

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-21.91 Tactical Employment of Anti-armor Platoons, Companies and Battalions
2. FM 3-22.34 TOW Weapon System
3. FM 3-22.37 Javelin Medium Anti-armor Weapon System
4. TM 09397B-12/1 Operator and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Javelin
5. TM 11581A-OR Operator and Organizational Maintenance Manual for M41 Saber System
6. TM 11803A-OM Operator Manual, MATV
7. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
8. TM 9-1425-923-12 Saber System (Improved Target Acquisition System) M41A
9. TM 9-2320-387-10 Operator Maintenance Manual for Truck; Utility: Cargo/Troop Carrier, 2-1/4 Ton, 4X4

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17640 Antiarmor Tracking And Live-Fire Range

**EQUIPMENT:**

1. M220E4 TOW weapon system.
2. M41A4 Saber system.

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

1. Maneuver/Training area
2. CCS (Appendix D)
3. HEAT/MAET (Appendix D)

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This covers offense, patrolling, mounted and dismounted operations. Actions on the objective may include execution of engagement criteria, application of target precedence, completion of range cards, fortification.

of positions, integration of fires with obstacles, etc. This event includes fires that are direct by line of sight or through concealment.  
2. The full range of environmental conditions includes daylight, limited visibility, urban, rural, littoral, arctic, jungle, mountain, etc. Mounted or dismounted/ground mounted.

---

INF-ASLT-5001: Provide direct fires (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an order, and a supported unit scheme of maneuver, while operating in the full range of environmental conditions.

STANDARD: To support the unit's scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Conduct tactical logistics.
4. Prepare for combat operations.
5. Execute movement.
6. Occupy firing positions.
7. Improve positions as necessary.
8. Execute signal plan.
9. Engage target(s).
10. Determine effects on target(s).
11. Re-engage target(s) as necessary.
12. Displace units as necessary.
13. Consolidate.

CHAINED EVENTS:

INF-ASLT-3005	0351-SMAW-1001	INF-ASLT-3002
INF-ASLT-3001	INF-ASLT-4002	INF-ASLT-4001
0351-SMAW-2003	0351-SMAW-2001	0351-SMAW-1008
0351-SMAW-1007	0351-SMAW-1006	0351-SMAW-1005
0351-SMAW-1004	0351-SMAW-1003	0351-SMAW-1002
INF-ASLT-3003		

RELATED EVENTS:

INF-FSPT-5001                      INF-FSPT-4001

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-15.5 Anti-armor Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
AX11 Cartridge, 9mm Spotting Rifle MK217	7 rounds per weapon
FMPR FOTS Multi-Purpose Round	1 rockets per section

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live

Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: This event can be trained through use of CACTUS.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This covers offense, defense, patrolling, mounted, and dismounted operations. Actions on the objective may include execution of engagement criteria, application of target precedence, completion of range cards, fortification of positions, integration of fires with obstacles, etc. This event includes fires that are direct by line of sight or through concealment.
2. The full range of environmental conditions includes daylight, limited visibility, urban, rural, littoral, arctic, jungle, mountain, etc. HX-07 83mm HEAA Practice Mk 7 Mod 0 may be used in place of HX-05 if range requires.

---

INF-ASLT-5002: Occupy firing positions (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an order, and a supported units scheme of maneuver.

STANDARD: To provide fires in support of the scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Maintain security.
2. Coordinate moving/stationary unit contingency plans, as necessary.
3. Recon tentative hot and cold firing positions.
4. Select firing positions.
5. Set conditions for occupation.
6. Move to firing positions.

CHAINED EVENTS:

INF-ASLT-3003	0351-SMAW-2001	INF-ASLT-3001
INF-ASLT-4002	INF-ASLT-4001	0351-SMAW-1010
0351-SMAW-1009	0351-SMAW-1008	0351-SMAW-1007
0351-SMAW-1006	0351-SMAW-1005	0351-SMAW-1004
0351-SMAW-1003	0351-SMAW-1002	0351-SMAW-1001
0351-SMAW-2003	INF-ASLT-3002	

RELATED EVENTS:

INF-ASLT-5004	INF-FSPT-5001	INF-ASLT-5001
INF-ASLT-5003		

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-15.5 Anti-armor Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Training for this event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS.

---

INF-ASLT-5003: Provide mobility (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): None

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an order, a supported unit's scheme of maneuver, an obstacle(s), and breaching materials.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Prepare for combat operations.
4. Conduct movement.
5. Set conditions for breach. (SOS)
6. Reduce obstacle. (R)
7. Assault through obstacle utilizing marked lane. (A)
8. Support follow-on movement through breached lanes.
9. Consolidate.

CHAINED EVENTS:

INF-ASLT-4003	0351-SMAW-1001	INF-ASLT-3004
INF-ASLT-3003	0351-APOB-2006	0351-APOB-2005
0351-APOB-2012	0351-APOB-2011	0351-APOB-2010
0351-APOB-2009	0351-APOB-2008	0351-APOB-2007
0351-APOB-2004	0351-APOB-2003	0351-APOB-2001
0351-DEMO-1006	0351-DEMO-1005	0351-DEMO-1004
0351-DEMO-1003	0351-DEMO-1002	0351-DEMO-1001
0351-DEMO-2012	0351-DEMO-1008	0351-DEMO-1009
0351-DEMO-1007	INF-MAN-5205	0351-SMAW-1008
0351-SMAW-1007	0351-SMAW-2003	0351-SMAW-2001
0351-SMAW-1006	0351-SMAW-1005	0351-SMAW-1004
0351-SMAW-1003	0351-SMAW-1002	INF-ASLT-3005

REFERENCES:

1. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
2. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data (FM 5-34)
3. TM 013750-13&P/B Anti-personnel Obstacle Breaching System MK MOD 1, MK7 MOD 2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
AA54- Cartridge, 12 Gauge, Breaching, M103	6 rounds per weapon
M023 Charge, Demolition Block M112 1-1/4	16 charges per section
M028 Demolition Kit, Bangalore Torpedo M1	1 charges per section

M032 Charge, Demolition Block TNT 1-Pound	2 charges per section
M130 Cap, Blasting Electric M6	50 blasting caps per section
M131 Cap, Blasting Non-Electric M7	50 blasting caps per section
M456 Cord, Detonating PETN Type I Class E	100 FT per section
M670 Fuse, Blasting Time M700	50 FT per section
M757 Charge, Assembly Demolition M183 Com	1 charges per section
MN88 Cap, Blasting, Non-Electric, M21	50 FT per platoon
MN08 Igniter, Time Blasting Fuse with Sho	51 igniters per section
MN79 Mine, Antipersonnel Obstacle Breachi	1 charges per section

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17830 Light Demolition Range  
Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Training for this event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event requires close coordination with the supported unit for setting the conditions at the breach site and assaulting through the breach site, etc.
2. This event applies to explosive breaches as well as mechanical.

---

INF-ASLT-5004: Provide counter-mobility (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an order, a supported unit's scheme of maneuver, and obstacle materials.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Prepare for combat.
4. Recon obstacle site.
5. Select obstacle site.
6. Secure obstacle site.
7. Establish obstacle(s).
8. Consolidate.

CHAINED EVENTS:

INF-ASLT-3006	INF-ASLT-3002	INF-ASLT-4002
0351-DEMO-1008	0351-DEMO-1007	0351-DEMO-1001
0351-DEMO-1005	0351-DEMO-1004	0351-DEMO-1003
0351-DEMO-1002	0351-DEMO-1006	

RELATED EVENTS:

INF-MAN-5102	INF-MAN-5101	INF-FSPT-4001
--------------	--------------	---------------

INF-MAN-4002

INF-FSPT-5001

INF-MAN-4101

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data (FM 5-34)
2. MCWP 3-15.5 Anti-armor Operations
3. MCWP 3-31.2 Mine Warfare

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
K143 Mine, Antipersonnel M18A1 with M57 F	3 mines per section
M023 Charge, Demolition Block M112 1-1/4	16 charges per section
M032 Charge, Demolition Block TNT 1-Pound	2 charges per section
M130 Cap, Blasting Electric M6	50 blasting caps per section
M131 Cap, Blasting Non-Electric M7	50 blasting caps per section
M456 Cord, Detonating PETN Type I Class E	100 FT per section
M670 Fuse, Blasting Time M700	50 FT per section
M757 Charge, Assembly Demolition M183 Com	1 charges per section
MN88 Cap, Blasting, Non-Electric, M21	50 FT per platoon
MN08 Igniter, Time Blasting Fuse with Sho	51 igniters per section

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17830 Light Demolition Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This event requires close coordination with the supported unit for integration of obstacles with fires and maneuver as well as ensuring obstacles are observed.

---

**INF-C2-5001:** Conduct planning (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, a mission, and a commander's intent.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Receive HHQ order.
2. Set timeline.
3. Conduct estimate of the situation.
4. Determine enemy courses of action.
5. Form tentative plan.
6. Issue warning order.
7. Conduct coordination.
8. Arrange for reconnaissance.
9. Conduct reconnaissance.
10. Complete the plan.
11. Issue the order.
12. Prepare for combat.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0331-EMPL-2013	0351-DEMO-2003	0302-C2-2002
INF-FSPT-5001	0302-FSPT-1005	0302-FSPT-1001
INF-FSPT-4001		

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCP)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training for this event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS and the IIT.

---

**INF-C2-5002:** Prepare for combat (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a mission and commanders intent from a warning order or operations order.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Receive and issue orders/update.
3. Draw logistics.
4. Prepare equipment/weapons.
5. Conduct pre-combat checks and inspections.
6. Conduct rehearsals.
7. Conduct confirmations briefs.
8. Conduct weapons function testing if possible.
9. Conduct communications checks as required.
10. Following execution, conduct after action review.
11. Following execution, conduct debrief.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:** INF-C2-5001

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0302-CSS-2001	INF-CSS-5001	0311-PAT-2002
0300-TVEH-2006	0300-TVEH-2001	INF-MAN-4201
0300-ISUL-2501	INF-MAN-5212	INF-MAN-5201
0302-C2-2004	INF-C2-5003	INF-FSPT-4001
INF-FSPT-5001	INF-MAN-4003	

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Training for this event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS and the IIT.

---

INF-C2-5003: Integrate enablers (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, an order, and available supporting or attached enablers.

STANDARD: To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area operations.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Integrate fires.
4. Request additional assets that provide a desired capability as needed.
5. Conduct tactical logistics.
6. Prepare for combat operations.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: INF-C2-5001

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. JP 3-08 Interagency, Intergovernmental Organization, and Nongovernmental organization Coordination during Joint Operations, VOL I and II

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Training for this event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS and IIT.

---

INF-C2-5004: Execute command and control (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, a mission, and a commander's intent.

STANDARD: To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning.
2. Establish main effort.
3. Establish tactical control measures.
4. Establish signal plan.
5. Position leaders to best command unit actions.
6. Prepare for combat.
7. Track subordinate, higher, adjacent, supporting, and other actions.
8. Issue frag orders as needed.

9. Report/provide information to higher, adjacent, supporting, and other units.
10. Assess the situation.
11. Prepare for follow on operations.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

INF-C2-5001                      INF-C2-5002

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training for this event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS and IIT.

---

**INF-CSS-5001:** Conduct tactical logistics (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, a mission, and commander's intent, while operating independently or as part of a larger unit.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Request logistics support.
3. Prepare for combat.
4. Execute motorized movement.
5. Conduct CASEVAC.
6. Conduct resupply.
7. Conduct maintenance.
8. Report logistics status.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

INF-C2-5001                      INF-C2-5002

**CHAINED EVENTS:** 0302-CSS-2001

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
2. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training for this event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: The unit determines the logistical requirements based on higher headquarters' requirements and in accordance with the mission. Develops a logistics plan to include: establishing deliver times or supply points based on technique of distribution, identifying combat load and operational equipment requirements for the unit, procedures for maintenance and medical services, a timeline for execution, priority of support, and inspection criteria and location. The unit coordinates logistical support in a timely manner to include: required classes of supply, method and location of distribution, motor transportation requirements, medical service support, and maintenance needs. Conducts resupply, maintenance, and organizes service support in a secure manner, per the timeline, and to the standard and priority identified in the plan.

---

INF-FP-5001: Conduct Force Protection (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, a mission, and a commander's intent.

STANDARD: To mitigate risk to friendly forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning.
2. Determine hazards to the force.
3. Implement hazard mitigation.
4. Continually reassess.

REFERENCES:

1. NAVMC 2927 Antiterrorism/Force Protection Campaign Plan
  2. MCO 3302.1D The Marine Corps Antiterrorism Program
- 

INF-FP-5002: Operate in a CBRN Threat Environment (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, an order, and a CBRN threat.

STANDARD: To accomplish the mission a meet the commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning.
2. Conduct tactical logistics.
3. Prepare for combat.
4. Conduct CBRN reporting.
5. Conduct operations in a contaminated environment.

6. Conduct decontamination.
7. Conduct consolidation.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-37.2 Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for NBC Protection
3. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination (FM 3-5)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

Planning should include the following:

1. Conduct CBRN threat analysis.
2. Plan for alternate tactical control measures/routes.
3. Plan for tracking and handling of CBRN casualties and contaminated equipment.
4. Prepare CBRN Defense/Consequence Management plan.
5. Plan for CBRN logistics to include CBRN defense equipment, medical supplies, decontamination supplies.
6. Plan for security of incident site until returned to pre-incident status.

---

**INF-FP-5003:** Operate an entry control point (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, an order, and a controlled operating base or outpost.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent and prevent enemy forces from gaining covert or forced entry to the controlled area.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Integrate fires.
4. Conduct tactical logistics.
5. Prepare for combat.
6. Occupy the entry control point.
7. Conduct linkup with adjacent forces, as required.
8. Execute security plan.
9. Execute priorities of work.
10. Register fires.
11. Execute command and control.
12. Control vehicles and personnel.
13. Search vehicles and personnel.

14. Track vehicles and personnel.
15. Escalate force, as necessary.
16. Conduct information collections.
17. Detain personnel.
18. Conduct tactical casualty care.
19. Conduct consolidation.

CHAINED EVENTS: INF-MAN-4212

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	100 rounds per weapon
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	60 rounds per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	100 rounds per Team
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M	3 Simulator per Platoon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

Planning considerations should include:

1. Vehicle and personnel search areas.
2. Defense-in-depth and positive access control measures.
3. Vehicle and personnel inspection areas.
4. Terrorist incident response and consequence management measures (Emergency Action Plan, (EAP)).
5. Random antiterrorism measures (RAMs).
6. Plan for collection of biometric data and conduct electronic exploitation as appropriate.

---

INF-FP-5004: Operate a traffic control point (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, an order.

STANDARD: To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Integrate fires.
4. Conduct tactical logistics.
5. Prepare for combat.
6. Depart friendly lines.
7. Occupy the traffic control point.

8. Conduct linkup with adjacent forces as required.
9. Execute security plan.
10. Execute priorities of work.
11. Execute command and control.
12. Control vehicles and personnel.
13. Search vehicles and personnel.
14. Track vehicles and personnel.
15. Escalate force as necessary.
16. Conduct information collections.
17. Detain personnel.
18. Conduct tactical casualty care.
19. Conduct consolidation.
20. Remove traffic control point.
21. Return to friendly lines.
22. Conduct debrief.

**RELATED EVENTS:**

INF-MAN-4211                      INF-MAN-4212

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	100 rounds per unit
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	80 rounds per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	100 rounds per Team
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M	3 Simulator per Platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

Planning considerations should include:

1. Vehicle and personnel search areas.
2. Defense-in-depth and positive access control measures.
3. Vehicle and personnel inspection areas.
4. Terrorist incident response and consequence management measures (Emergency Action Plan, (EAP)).
5. Random antiterrorism measures (RAMs).
6. Plan for collection of biometric data and conduct electronic exploitation as appropriate.

---

**INF-FSPT-5001:** Integrate fires (A)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, an order, a scheme of maneuver, and supporting arms available.

**STANDARD:** To support the scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Confirm targets/scheduling.
3. Conduct tactical logistics.
4. Prep for combat.
5. Exercise command and control.
6. Conduct targeting.
7. Conduct weaponeering.
8. Deconflict battlespace geometry.
9. Execute engagement criteria.
10. Execute target precedence.
11. Determine effects of fires.
12. Refine accuracy.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

INF-ASLT-4003	INF-ASLT-4002	INF-ASLT-4001
INF-MORT-4004	INF-MORT-4003	INF-MORT-4002
INF-MGUN-4003	INF-ANTI-4002	INF-ANTI-4001
INF-FSPT-4001	INF-MGUN-4006	INF-MGUN-4005
INF-MGUN-4004	INF-MAN-4003	

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
3. MCWP 3-16.2 Procedures for the Marine Corps Fire Support
4. MCWP 3-16C Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Targeting Process

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training for this event should be augmented through use of CACCTUS.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Weaponeering is defined by "selecting the best supporting arms IOT attack the target considering availability and coordination requirements. Weaponeering is "selecting the appropriate weapon and munitions based on the desired effect and lethality and non-lethality of a specific munition" MCWP 3-16.
2. Targeting is the process of selecting targets and matching the appropriate response to them comprised of the following four activities: Decide, Detect, Deliver, Assess.

---

**INF-INT-5001:** Conduct information collections (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given an order, intelligence requirements, and equipment.

**STANDARD:** To provide information relative to the enemy, terrain, and weather that supports the commander's intelligence requirements.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Disseminate information requirements.
3. Request non-organic support into the collection effort.
4. Integrate non-organic support.
5. Coordinate individual collection efforts into the collection plan.
6. Integrate intelligence collection priorities into operations.
7. Conduct tactical site exploitation.
8. Report information to higher.
9. Receive intelligence from higher.
10. Disseminate intelligence.
11. Refine collection efforts.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0300-TRNG-2001	0311-INT-2004	INF-INT-4001
0300-CMBH-2008	0300-CMBH-2007	INF-MAN-4302
0300-CMBH-2004	0300-CMBH-2003	0300-CMBH-2002
0300-CMBH-2001	0300-CMBH-2005	

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations
2. MCWP 2-15.3 Ground Reconnaissance Operations (FMFM 2-2)
3. MCWP 2-2 MAGTF Intelligence Collection
4. MCWP 2-4 MAGTF Intelligence Dissemination

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** This event can be trained through use of the IIT.

---

**INF-INT-5002:** Conduct Tactical Site Exploitation (TSE) (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given an order, and a site.

**STANDARD:** To obtain information that supports mission accomplishment and commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Task organize for TSE.
3. Conduct planning.
4. Conduct tactical logistics.

5. Prep for combat.
6. Depart friendly lines.
7. Maintain security.
8. Conduct deliberate search of site.
9. Execute priorities of exploitation.
10. Detain personnel if necessary.
11. Conduct tactical questioning.
12. Document finds including location, sketch/photographs.
13. Bag finds.
14. Tag/label finds.
15. Establish chain of custody.
16. Transfer finds to higher.

CHAINED EVENTS: INF-INT-4001

REFERENCES:

1. CALL 07-26 Tactical Site Exploitation and Cache Search Operations
2. ISBN: 9780160800863 USMC Site Exploitation: Evidence Collection - training support package
3. MCRP 3-31.4B Multi-service Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Cordon and Search Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: This event can be trained through use of the IIT.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Finds are defined as items, documents, detainees, weapons, etc. of value relative to the information requirements.

---

INF-MAN-5001: Conduct a ground attack (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, attachments, an order, while motorized, mechanized, or dismounted, and operating in the full range of environmental conditions, during daylight and limited visibility.

STANDARD: To accomplish the mission and meet commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Task organize.
4. Integrate attachments as required.
5. Integrate fires.
6. Conduct tactical logistics.
7. Prep for combat.

8. Execute command and control.
9. Cross line of departure.
10. Breach obstacles as necessary.
11. Conduct gap crossing if necessary.
12. Establish support by fire position(s).
13. Move to assault position.
14. Dismount if necessary.
15. Execute actions of the objective.
16. Consolidate.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0302-OPS-1001	0302-OFF-1001	0302-OFF-1007
0302-OFF-1006	0302-FSPT-1005	0302-OFF-1004
0302-OFF-1003	0302-OFF-1002	INF-MAN-4001
0302-OFF-1005		

**RELATED EVENTS:**

INF-ASLT-5003	INF-ASLT-5001	INF-ASLT-4001
INF-MAN-5207	INF-ANTI-5001	INF-MGUN-4003
INF-FSPT-5001	INF-FSPT-4001	INF-MGUN-4005
INF-MGUN-5003	INF-MGUN-5001	INF-ANTI-4001

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
3. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
4. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	20 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	800 rounds per weapon
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	800 rounds per unit
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	120 rounds per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	800 rounds per weapon
A143 Cartridge, 7.62mm Ball M80 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A151 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball/1 Tracer Li	800 rounds per weapon
A358 Cartridge, 9mm TP-T M939 for AT-4 Tr	1 round per weapon
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 signals per weapon
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 signals per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	2 signals per platoon
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 rounds per weapon
BA16 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M720A1	16 rounds per section
B643 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M888	16 rounds per section
B647 Cartridge, 60mm Illuminating M721	12 rounds per section
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	4 rounds per weapon
C995 Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT	3 rockets per platoon
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	20 grenades per platoon
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	20 fuses per platoon
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	10 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon

G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
HA21 Rocket, 21mm Sub-Caliber, M72AS Trai	3 rockets per platoon
HA29 Rckt 66mm HE, M72A7, LAW W/GRAZE	3 rockets per platoon
FMPR FOTS Multi-Purpose Round	1 rockets per section
FPTR FOTS Practice Training Round	1 rockets per section
L305 SIGNAL, ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A	3 signals per platoon
L307 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L314 Signal, Illumination Ground Green St	3 signals per platoon
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M	3 projectiles per platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course  
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range  
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live  
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. 30 rounds per M249 at a relation of 3 times the rifleman allocation.
2. Attack assumes a reinforced platoon assaulting a fortified objective defended by an enemy rifle squad. Targets on 2 hit kill.
3. Mortars HE allow 4 minutes for machineguns to move into, occupy and fire from their position.
4. Machineguns allow 10 minutes of suppression at 5 seconds between impacts on one objective.
5. Assumes a mechanical breach of obstacle.
6. Planning considerations for tactical load, tactical spread, stick planning, bump plans, dismount points, refuel, go/no go criteria, vehicle recovery, insert plan, comm considerations, signal plan, limited visibility considerations {such as use of a probable line of deployment, illumination plan, night vision plan, noise and light discipline, and limits of advance}, etc).

---

**INF-MAN-5002:** Conduct a movement to contact (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, attachments, mission, a commander's intent, an area of operations, and an uncertain enemy situation.

**STANDARD:** To gain and maintain contact, accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Task organize.

4. Integrate attachments as required.
5. Integrate fires.
6. Conduct tactical logistics.
7. Prep for combat.
8. Execute command and control.
9. Cross line of departure.
10. Monitor and adjust movement formations based on estimate of the situation.
11. Breach obstacles as necessary.
12. Conduct gap crossing if necessary.
13. Execute actions on contact.
14. Develop the situation for higher, adjacent, and supporting in accordance with commander's intent.
15. Consolidate/transition.

**RELATED EVENTS:**

INF-ASLT-4001	INF-ASLT-5001	INF-MORT-4004
INF-MORT-5001	INF-MAN-4003	INF-MGUN-5001
INF-ANTI-4001	INF-ANTI-5001	INF-FSPT-4001
INF-MGUN-4005	INF-MGUN-4003	INF-MAN-5005

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
3. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
4. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	20 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	800 rounds per weapon
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	800 rounds per unit
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	120 rounds per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	800 rounds per weapon
A143 Cartridge, 7.62mm Ball M80 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A151 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball/1 Tracer Li	800 rounds per weapon
A358 Cartridge, 9mm TP-T M939 for AT-4 Tr	1 round per weapon
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 signals per weapon
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 signals per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	2 signals per platoon
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 rounds per weapon
BA16 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M720A1	16 rounds per section
B643 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M888	16 rounds per section
B647 Cartridge, 60mm Illuminating M721	12 rounds per section
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	4 rounds per weapon
C995 Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT	3 rockets per platoon
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	20 grenades per platoon
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	20 fuses per platoon
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	10 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon

HA21 Rocket, 21mm Sub-Caliber, M72AS Trai	3 rockets per platoon
HA29 Rckt 66mm HE, M72A7, LAW W/GRAZE	3 rockets per platoon
FMPR FOTS Multi-Purpose Round	1 rockets per section
FPTR FOTS Practice Training Round	1 rockets per section
L305. SIGNAL , ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A	3 signals per platoon
L307 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L314 Signal, Illumination Ground Green St	3 signals per platoon
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M	3 projectiles per platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course  
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range  
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live  
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Task org for MTC is advance guard and main body which includes connecting files, flank security, and rear guard, provide for traveling overwatch.
2. Unit determines to bypass or attack enemy forces encountered with economy of force before massing and concentrating on the enemy main body.

---

**INF-MAN-5003:** Conduct a helicopter-borne/tiltrotor-borne attack (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, attachments, an order, and assault support aircraft, and operating in the full range of environmental conditions, during daylight or limited visibility.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission and meet commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Task organize.
4. Integrate attachments as required.
5. Integrate fires.
6. Conduct tactical logistics.
7. Prep for combat.
8. Execute command and control.
9. Conduct insert.
10. Move to assault position.
11. Breach obstacles as necessary.
12. Conduct gap crossing if necessary.
13. Establish support by fire position(s).
14. Execute actions of the objective.

15. Consolidate.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
3. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
4. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	20 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	800 rounds per weapon
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	800 rounds per unit
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	120 rounds per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	800 rounds per weapon
A143 Cartridge, 7.62mm Ball M80 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A151 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball/1 Tracer Li	800 rounds per weapon
A358 Cartridge, 9mm TP-T M939 for AT-4 Tr	1 round per weapon
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 signals per weapon
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 signals per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	2 signals per platoon
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 rounds per weapon
BA16 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M720A1	16 rounds per section
B643 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M888	16 rounds per section
B647 Cartridge, 60mm Illuminating M721	12 rounds per section
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	4 rounds per weapon
C995 Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT	3 rockets per platoon
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	20 grenades per platoon
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	20 fuses per platoon
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	10 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
HA21 Rocket, 21mm Sub-Caliber, M72AS Trai	3 rockets per platoon
HA29 Rckt 66mm HE, M72A7, LAW W/GRAZE	3 rockets per platoon
FMPR FOTS Multi-Purpose Round	1 rockets per section
FPTR FOTS Practice Training Round	1 rockets per section
L305 SIGNAL, ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A	3 signals per platoon
L307 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L314 Signal, Illumination Ground Green St	3 signals per platoon
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M	3 projectiles per platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course  
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range  
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live  
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

Planning considerations should include:

1. Tactical load/tactical spread
2. HWSAT planning
3. Bump plans
4. Pickup zone/landing zone (primary/alt)
5. Go/no go criteria
6. Refuel plans
7. Tactical recovery of aircraft/personnel
8. Comm considerations
9. Signal plan
10. Key GCE billets
11. MACO
12. Emergency extract plan
13. Brevity codes
14. Signal plan
15. Abort criteria
16. Immediate re-embark
17. Alert aircraft
18. Contingencies
19. Reaction forces

FOCUS ON: ground tactical plan, landing plan, air movement plan, load plan, and staging plan, etc).

---

**INF-MAN-5004:** Conduct a raid (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, attachments, a mission and commander's intent while motorized, mechanized, or dismounted with or without assault support.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent while maintaining accountability of all personnel and equipment.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Task organize.
4. Integrate attachments as required.
5. Integrate fires.
6. Prep for combat.
7. Execute command and control.
8. Move to the objective.
9. Isolate the objective.
10. Execute actions on the objective.
11. Conduct information collection.
12. Conduct accountability.
13. Withdrawl.
14. Conduct post combat actions.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
3. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon
4. MCWP 3-43.1 Raid Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	20 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	800 rounds per weapon
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	800 rounds per unit
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	120 rounds per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	800 rounds per weapon
A143 Cartridge, 7.62mm Ball M80 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A151 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball/1 Tracer Li	800 rounds per weapon
A358 Cartridge, 9mm TP-T M939 for AT-4 Tr	1 round per weapon
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 signals per weapon
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 signals per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	2 signals per platoon
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 rounds per weapon
BA16 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M720A1	16 rounds per section
B643 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M888	16 rounds per section
B647 Cartridge, 60mm Illuminating M721	12 rounds per section
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	4 rounds per weapon
C995 Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT	3 rockets per platoon
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	20 grenades per platoon
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	20 fuses per platoon
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	10 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
HA21 Rocket, 21mm Sub-Caliber, M72AS Trai	3 rockets per platoon
HA29 Rckt 66mm HE, M72A7, LAW W/GRAZE	3 rockets per platoon
FMPR FOTS Multi-Purpose Round	1 rockets per section
FPTR FOTS Practice Training Round	1 rockets per section
L305 SIGNAL, ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A	3 signals per platoon
L307 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L314 Signal, Illumination Ground Green St	3 signals per platoon
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M	3 projectiles per platoon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course  
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range  
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live  
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Range must support all company weapons and

attached weapons, to include dud-producing ordnance and overhead fires.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Raid specific planning considerations, means of movement, task org {assault, support, security}, withdrawal/MACO procedures, contingency plans)
2. Admin notes, see reference based on goals of raid; destruction, snatch and grab, etc.)

---

INF-MAN-5005: Integrate Armor (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, an order, and a supporting or attached tank and/or mechanized unit.

STANDARD: To maximize maneuverability, speed, momentum, firepower, and shock effect to accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning.
2. Integrate fires.
3. Conduct tactical logistics.
4. Coordinate communications.
5. Coordinate visual signal plan.
6. Conduct prep for combat ensuring tanks included in planning, rehearsals, and all confirmation briefs.
7. Execute command and control.
8. Designate targets based on capabilities and limitations.
9. Deconflict battle space geometry.
10. Provide security for tanks.

CHAINED EVENTS: INF-MAN-4003

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Additional considerations for tanks/mech in assembly areas, concerns

for armor routes, threat, planning for team tank, team mech, or tank/dismounted infantry integration, routes, obstacles, environments, fuel, vehicle recovery, maintenance, communication plan, load plans, bump plans, signal plans, fire commands, mech and tank caps/lms, movement along armor considerations, etc.

2. Planning should also include additional non-organic armor-infantry team fires.

3. Tanks can't carry personnel but they can carry ammo/equipment for dismounts.

4. Armor has significant logistical requirements.

---

INF-MAN-5101: Conduct a position defense (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, attachments, an order to conduct a deliberate or hasty defense, specified duration of the operation, and an area.

STANDARD: To accomplish the mission and meet commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Determine appropriate defensive technique.
3. Conduct planning.
4. Integrate attachments as required.
5. Integrate fires.
6. Conduct tactical logistics.
7. Prep for combat.
8. Occupy the defense.
9. Conduct linkup with adjacent forces as required.
10. Execute command and control.
11. Execute security plan.
12. Execute priorities of work.
13. Integrate least engaged unit into the defense as necessary.
14. Execute the scheme of maneuver and fire support plan.
15. Consolidate.

CHAINED EVENTS:

INF-MAN-4101	0302-C2-2002	0302-DEF-1008
0302-DEF-1007	0302-DEF-1002	0302-DEF-1005
0302-DEF-1004	0302-DEF-1003	0302-DEF-1006

RELATED EVENTS:

INF-ASLT-4002	INF-ASLT-5004	INF-ASLT-5002
INF-ASLT-5001	INF-MORT-4004	INF-MORT-4001
INF-MGUN-5002	INF-ANTI-5002	INF-ANTI-4002
INF-FSPT-4001	INF-MGUN-4006	INF-MGUN-4004
INF-MORT-5001		

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations

3. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
4. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon
5. MCWP 3-15.1 Machineguns and Machinegun Gunnery
6. MCWP 3-15.2 Tactical Employment of Mortars
7. MCWP 3-15.5 Anti-armor Operations
8. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
9. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
10. MCWP 3-23.1 Close Air Support

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	20 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	800 rounds per weapon
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	800 rounds per unit
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	120 rounds per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	800 rounds per weapon
A143 Cartridge, 7.62mm Ball M80 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A151 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball/1 Tracer Li	800 rounds per weapon
A358 Cartridge, 9mm TP-T M939 for AT-4 Tr	1 round per weapon
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 signals per weapon
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 signals per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	2 signals per platoon
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 rounds per weapon
BA16 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M720A1	16 rounds per section
B643 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M888	16 rounds per section
B647 Cartridge, 60mm Illuminating M721	12 rounds per section
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	4 rounds per weapon
C995 Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT	3 rockets per platoon
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	20 grenades per platoon
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	20 fuses per platoon
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	10 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
HA21 Rocket, 21mm Sub-Caliber, M72AS Trai	3 rockets per platoon
HA29 Rckt 66mm HE, M72A7, LAW W/GRAZE	3 rockets per platoon
FMPR FOTS Multi-Purpose Round	1 rockets per section
FPTR FOTS Practice Training Round	1 rockets per section
L305. SIGNAL , ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A	3 signals per platoon
L307 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L314 Signal, Illumination Ground Green St	3 signals per platoon
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M	3 projectiles per platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
 Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course  
 Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range  
 Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live  
 Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
 Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Planning should include: forms of defense: sector, perimeter, linear, non-linear, reverse slope, defensive recon considerations, etc.
2. Integration of fires should include: Long range fires, close supporting fires, and final protective fires.
3. Security plan: should be commenced as early as possible, even during the leader's recon if able.

---

INF-MAN-5102: Conduct a retrograde (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, an order, a rear area or amphibious shipping, and an enemy.

STANDARD: To accomplish the mission and meet commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Integrate fires.
4. Conduct tactical logistics.
5. Prep for combat.
6. Execute command and control.
7. Set conditions for retrograde.
8. Execute the retrograde scheme of maneuver and fire support plan.
9. Consolidate.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
3. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	20 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	800 rounds per weapon
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	800 rounds per unit
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	120 rounds per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	800 rounds per weapon
A143 Cartridge, 7.62mm Ball M80 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A151 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball/1 Tracer Li	800 rounds per weapon
A358 Cartridge, 9mm TP-T M939 for AT-4 Tr	1 round per weapon
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 signals per weapon
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 signals per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	2 signals per platoon

B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 rounds per weapon
BA16 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M720A1	16 rounds per section
B643 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M888	16 rounds per section
B647 Cartridge, 60mm Illuminating M721	12 rounds per section
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	4 rounds per weapon
C995 Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT	3 rockets per platoon
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	20 grenades per platoon
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	20 fuses per platoon
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	10 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
HA21 Rocket, 21mm Sub-Caliber, M72AS Trai	3 rockets per platoon
HA29 Rckt 66mm HE, M72A7, LAW W/GRAZE	3 rockets per platoon
FMPR FOTS Multi-Purpose Round	1 rockets per section
FPTR FOTS Practice Training Round	1 rockets per section
L305 SIGNAL, ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A	3 signals per platoon
L307 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L314 Signal, Illumination Ground Green St	3 signals per platoon
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M	3 projectiles per platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Planning must include rear area support displacement plan, retrograde route planning, timelines, engagement criteria, disengagement criteria, determine retrograde form of maneuver: retirement, withdrawal, or delay; displacement of C2; determine overwatch techniques {bounding, traveling, static}, logistics planning for moving retrograde, deception plan
2. Integrating Fires requires: supporting agency displacement plans, attack guidance coordination, battle handover conditions, fire support control measures, etc.

---

**INF-MAN-5201:** Conduct assembly areas actions (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, a mission, and a commander's intent, remote likelihood of enemy contact, and in preparation for follow on operations.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission, meet the commander's intent, and prepare for follow on operations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify tentative positions.

2. Quartering party/guides conduct reconnaissance of tentative locations.
3. Conduct movement to designated location.
4. Guides lead units to assigned sectors/positions.
5. Maintain and improve all around security (S).
6. Position automatic weapons on most likely avenues of approach (A).
7. Improve fields of fire, obstacles, fire support plan, positions/entrenchment (FE)
8. Conduct planning.
9. Conduct tactical logistics.
10. Prep for combat.

RELATED EVENTS: INF-MAN-4201

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event includes overlapping event components with many type operation events. Such redundancy is necessary, but does not necessitate duplicate evaluation or execution. Additionally, an assembly area can be a ship, FOB, LZ, or some other area where contact with the enemy is relatively remote.

---

INF-MAN-5202: Conduct a relief in place (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, attachments, an order, and while serving as either the relieving or defending unit.

STANDARD: To transition tactical control with minimal disruption to operations and vulnerability to threat actions.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct Planning.
3. Integrate fires.
4. Prep for combat.
5. Execute command and control.
6. Conduct a linkup.
7. Set conditions for relief in place.
8. Move to relief positions.
9. Conduct consolidation as required.
10. Report status of relief in place to HHQ.
11. Receive HHQ approval for transfer of tactical control.
12. Conduct battle handover to relieving unit.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Planning must include left seat/right seat plan, detailed recon, shared intelligence, method, obstacle plans, timelines, equipment/ammunition handover/shortfalls, relationships, enablers, local policies, battle handover conditions, control measures, casualty plan, detainee transfer, etc.
2. Fires planning must include left seat/right seat plan, shared procedures, target information, attack guidance coordination, battle handover conditions, fire support control measures, etc.

---

INF-MAN-5203: Conduct a passage of lines (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, attachments, an order, and while serving as either the moving or stationary unit.

STANDARD: To accomplish the mission, meet the commander's intent, with minimal disruption to operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Integrate fires.
4. Prep for combat.
5. Execute command and control.
6. Conduct a linkup.
7. Set conditions for passage of lines.
8. Conduct battle handover with stationary unit.
9. Move through the passage route(s).
10. Conduct battle handover to moving unit.

CHAINED EVENTS: INF-MAN-4202

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
3. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Planning must be coordinated between stationary and moving units, must include control measures for link up, accountability (lead/rear trace), coordinated casevac plan, coordinated detainee plan, control measures for release point(s).
  2. Battle handover starts on the warfighting functions (intel on enemy sit, for considerations).
- 

INF-MAN-5204: Conduct a linkup (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, an order, linkup point(s), and while serving as either the moving or stationary unit.

STANDARD: To linkup with a friendly unit.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning.
2. Integrate fires.
3. Prep for combat.
4. Execute command and control.
5. Set conditions for linkup.
6. Move to contact point.
7. Moving unit initiates far recognition signal.
8. Stationary unit responds with far recognition signal.
9. Stationary unit initiates near recognition signal.
10. Moving unit responds with near recognition signal.
11. Coordinate follow-on operations.

CHAINED EVENTS: INF-MAN-4206

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Planning must be coordinated between stationary and moving units, must include control measures for link up, accountability, signal plan, coordinated casevac plan at a minimum.

---

INF-MAN-5205: Breach an obstacle (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, attachments, order, an obstacle that cannot be bypassed, and breaching materials.

STANDARD: To gain mobility through an obstacle and accomplish the mission with minimal delay.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Integrate fires.
4. Conduct tactical logistics.
5. Prep for combat.
6. Execute command and control.
7. Set conditions for breach (SOS).
8. Conduct actions at breach site (R).
9. Mark cleared lanes.
10. Maintain near and far side security.
11. Support follow-on movement through breach lanes.
12. Continue mission or consolidate as necessary.

CHAINED EVENTS:

INF-MAN-4203                      INF-ASLT-4003

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon
3. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
4. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
AA54 Cartridge, 12 Gauge, Breaching, M103	6 rounds per weapon
M023 Charge, Demolition Block M112 1-1/4	16 charges per platoon
M028 Demolition Kit, Bangalore Torpedo M1	1 charges per platoon
M032 Charge, Demolition Block TNT 1-Pound	2 charges per platoon
M130 Cap, Blasting Electric M6	50 blasting caps per platoon
M131 Cap, Blasting Non-Electric M7	50 blasting caps per platoon
M456 Cord, Detonating PETN Type I Class E	100 FT per platoon
M670 Fuse, Blasting Time M700	50 FT per platoon
M757 Charge, Assembly Demolition M183 Com	1 charges per platoon
MN88 Cap, Blasting, Non-Electric, M21	50 FT per platoon
MN08 Igniter, Time Blasting Fuse with Sho	51 per platoon
MN79 Mine, Antipersonnel Obstacle Breachi	1 mines per platoon
MN84 Demolition Kit, APOBS Inert	1 mines per platoon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Training for this event can be augmented through use of DVTE and VBS2.

---

INF-MAN-5206: Conduct consolidation (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, a mission, and a commander's intent, and in preparation for follow on operations.

STANDARD: To enable preparation for combat while maintaining security, reorganizing the unit, and improving the current position.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Maintain and improve all around security. (S)
2. Execute command and control.
3. Displace or reposition elements as required.
4. Position automatic weapons on most likely avenues of enemy approach. (A)
5. Process ammunition, casualty, and equipment (ACE) reports.
6. Redistribute ammunition, personnel, supplies, and equipment.
7. Conduct tactical casualty care as required.
8. Detain personnel as required.
9. Conduct information collections as required.
10. Improve fields of fire/sectors of fire, obstacles, fire support plan, positions/entrenchment, etc. (FE)
11. Conduct planning for follow-on operations.
12. Conduct tactical logistics.
13. Conduct prep for combat.

CHAINED EVENTS: INF-MAN-4205

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: The list of event components occurs nearly simultaneously.

---

INF-MAN-5207: Support by fire/overwatch (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, attachments, an order, and a moving or maneuvering unit/echelon scheme of maneuver; while motorized, mechanized, or dismounted; during daylight or limited visibility.

STANDARD: To support maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Task organize.
4. Integrate attachments as required.
5. Integrate fires.
6. Conduct tactical logistics.
7. Prep for combat.
8. Execute command and control.
9. Occupy firing/overwatch positions.
10. Improve positions as necessary.
11. Execute signal plan.
12. Determine effects on target(s).
13. Adjust fires/overwatch as necessary.
14. Displace as necessary.
15. Consolidate.
16. Conduct post combat actions.

CHAINED EVENTS: INF-MAN-4204

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODTC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	20 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	800 rounds per weapon
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	800 rounds per unit
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	120 rounds per Marine
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	800 rounds per Team
A143 Cartridge, 7.62mm Ball M80 Linked	800 rounds per Team
A151 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball/1 Tracer Li	800 rounds per Team
A358 Cartridge, 9mm TP-T M939 for AT-4 Tr	1 round per weapon
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 signals per weapon
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 signals per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	2 signals per platoon
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 rounds per weapon
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	4 rounds per weapon
C995 Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT	3 rockets per platoon
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	3 grenades per Platoon
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	3 fuses per Platoon
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	3 grenades per Platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon

G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
HA21 Rocket, 21mm Sub-Caliber, M72AS Trai	3 rockets per platoon
HA29 Rckt 66mm HE, M72A7, LAW W/GRAZE	3 rockets per platoon
FMPR FOTS Multi-Purpose Round	1 rockets per section
FPTR FOTS Practice Training Round	1 rockets per section
L305 SIGNAL, ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A	3 signals per platoon
L307 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L314 Signal, Illumination Ground Green St	3 signals per platoon
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M	3 projectiles per platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training for this event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS, DVTE, and VBS2.

---

**INF-MAN-5208:** React to a meeting engagement (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** The unit is conducting a tactical movement. Elements have either observed or been engaged by enemy forces. The enemy can be moving or stationary.

**CONDITION:** Given a reinforced rifle platoon, an assigned mission.

**STANDARD:** The unit reacts to the enemy and the situation based on the commander's intent, maintaining control of all elements and awareness of subordinate and adjacent unit positions and actions.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. React per developed Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs), rehearsed immediate action drills, or in accordance with commander's intent.
2. Elements maintain awareness of adjacent unit locations.
3. Determine the enemy's location and disposition.
4. Forward an initial SITREP.
5. Conduct an assessment of the situation and issue a verbal fragmentary order that specifies an objective and provides control measures.
6. Set conditions to support follow on operations.
7. Consolidate, reorganize, and submit reports per Standard Operating Procedures.

**CHAINED EVENTS:** INF-MAN-4209

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	40
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	120

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range  
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live  
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range  
Facility Code 17671 Field Artillery Indirect Fire Range  
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range  
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training for this event can be augmented through use of DVTE and VBS2.

---

**INF-MAN-5209:** Conduct a cordon and search (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, attachments, a mission, commander's intent, a designated location, local populace, and local structures.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent with minimal collateral damage to the local populace and structures.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Task organize.
4. Integrate attachments as required.
5. Integrate fires.
6. Prep for combat.
7. Execute command and control.
8. Move to the objective.
9. Establish inner and outer cordon to isolate the objective.
10. Execute actions of the objective.
11. Conduct information collection.
12. Consolidate.
13. Conduct accountability.
14. Withdrawl.
15. Conduct post combat actions.

**CHAINED EVENTS:** INF-MAN-4213

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
2. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon
3. MCWP 3-33.5 Counterinsurgency Operations

4. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	20 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	800 rounds per weapon
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	800 rounds per unit
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	120 rounds per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	800 rounds per weapon
A143 Cartridge, 7.62mm Ball M80 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A151 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball/1 Tracer Li	800 rounds per weapon
A358 Cartridge, 9mm TP-T M939 for AT-4 Tr	1 round per weapon
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 signals per weapon
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 signals per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	2 signals per platoon
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 rounds per weapon
BA16 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M720A1	16 rounds per section
B643 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M888	16 rounds per section
B647 Cartridge, 60mm Illuminating M721	12 rounds per section
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	4 rounds per weapon
C995 Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT	3 rockets per platoon
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	20 grenades per platoon
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	20 fuses per platoon
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	10 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
HA21 Rocket, 21mm Sub-Caliber, M72AS Trai	3 rockets per platoon
HA29 Rckt 66mm HE, M72A7, LAW W/GRAZE	3 rockets per platoon
FMPR FOTS Multi-Purpose Round	1 rockets per section
FPTR FOTS Practice Training Round	1 rockets per section
L305 SIGNAL, ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A	3 signals per platoon
L307 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L314 Signal, Illumination Ground Green St	3 signals per platoon
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M	3 projectiles per platoon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Training for this event can be augmented through use of the IIT, DVTE, and VBS2.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Compared to a raid, this event is less kinetic, oriented more on protecting the people rather than the raid which is oriented on destruction of the enemy or enemy capabilities.

2. Cordon and search specific planning considerations, means of movement, task org {search, support, security}, withdrawal/MACO procedures, contingency plans, stability enablers, host nation forces, etc.

---

INF-MAN-5210: Detain personnel (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, an order, and apprehended personnel.

STANDARD: To ensure safe and expeditious handling of detainees in accordance with the laws of armed conflict.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Search detainees for weapons, ammunition, and any other items that may provide potential intelligence value.
2. Tag detainees.
3. Photograph scenes of intelligence value.
4. Inventory all items removed and collect them in a zip loc bag.
5. Report personnel detained.
6. Evacuate to a detainee collection point.
7. Segregate detainees based on perceived status of authority or position.
8. Safeguard detainees.
9. Complete documentation.

CHAINED EVENTS: INF-MAN-4207

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 4-11.8C Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

EQUIPMENT: Detainee kits

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Role players

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. The search should include all clothing on the individual, to include shoes. To ensure the safety and security of the capturing force, do not exempt anything from search.
2. Tag detainees with a DD Form 2745 (Capture Tag) or a field-expedient capture tag that includes the following information: date and time of capture, capturing unit, location of capture (grid coordinates), special circumstances of capture (how the person was captured, if the detainee resisted, if the detainee surrendered, and so forth), did the person have weapons on them at the time of capture, list all documents and other items on their person at the time of capture.

3. Deliver all documents/pocket litter captured with the detainee(s) in order to assist interrogators.
4. During initial screening, identify leaders and segregate them from the remainder of the population.

---

INF-MAN-5211: Conduct casualty evacuation (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, an order, and casualties.

STANDARD: To treat and evacuate casualties in a timely manner with minimal interruption to the mission while maintaining accountability.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish security.
2. Provide care under fire if required.
3. Move casualties to safe area.
4. Provide tactical casualty care.
5. Conduct triage.
6. Coordinate evacuation transport.
7. Move casualties to transport.

CHAINED EVENTS: INF-MAN-4208

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 4-11.1A MTP for Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries
2. MCWP 4-11.1 Health Service Support Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Initial reporting is part of the coordination for transport. Final reporting is part of maintaining accountability.

---

INF-MAN-5212: Employ Scout Snipers (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The platoon commander will incorporate the use of scout snipers to support his scheme of maneuver and intent. The platoon commander will provide a priority target list, engagement criteria, and destruction criteria for the snipers' use. The commander will receive and develop information on the enemy dispositions and transmit to higher/adjacent headquarters. The

commander will support the forward placed teams with appropriate supporting arms and quick reaction force. Commander incorporates the team(s) into his intelligence gathering effort.

**CONDITION:** Given scout snipers as an attachment, mission essential equipment and weapons, and a mission.

**STANDARD:** To support the scheme of maneuver and commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning, coordination, and prepare for combat.
2. Conduct intelligence preparation.
3. Establish task and purpose by phase of operation.
4. Establish information requirements.
5. Develop the fire support plan.
6. Designate tactical control measures.
7. Develop insert and extract plan, if applicable.
8. Establish quick reaction force/emergency extraction plan.
9. Conduct movement/actions at specified times, along specified routes, or in designated areas.
10. Provide priority target list, engagement criteria, and destruction criteria for the snipers' use.
11. Send and receive required reports.
12. Ensure readiness to support inserted teams with supporting arms and quick reaction force.
13. Determine best method to employ snipers in support of current mission (protect flanks, provide overwatch, direct fires in support of maneuver, etc.).
14. Develop a redundant communications plan.
15. Collect and report required information.
16. Determine logistical requirements and conduct resupply in a manner that will not compromise the sniper team(s).
17. Conduct debrief.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-15.3 Scout Sniping

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17560 Sniper Field-Fire Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Factors to be considered during planning must include, but is not limited to: insertion methods, extraction methods, emergency extraction methods and criteria, and quick reaction force support of the sniper team(s).

---

**INF-MAN-5301:** Conduct patrolling operations (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, attachments, an order, and an area to patrol from, while motorized, mechanized, or dismounted with or without assault support, and operating in the full range of environmental conditions, during daylight and limited visibility.

STANDARD: To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize.
3. Integrate attachments as required.
4. Integrate fires.
5. Conduct tactical logistics.
6. Prep for combat.
7. Constitute a quick reaction force (QRF).
8. Supervise departure of patrols from patrol base.
9. Conduct actions on the objective.
10. Execute immediate actions as required.
11. Conduct tactical casualty care as required.
12. Detain personnel if required.
13. Conduct information collection/TSE as required.
14. Conduct re-entry of patrols to patrol base.
15. Conduct post combat actions.

CHAINED EVENTS:

INF-MAN-4303	INF-MAN-4302	INF-MAN-4301
INF-MAN-5302	INF-MAN-5304	INF-MAN-5303
INF-MAN-4002		

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
3. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	20 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	800 rounds per weapon
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	800 rounds per unit
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	120 rounds per Marine
A358 Cartridge, 9mm TP-T M939 for AT-4 Tr	1 round per weapon
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 signals per weapon
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 signals per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	2 signals per platoon
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 rounds per weapon
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	4 rounds per weapon
C995 Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT	3 rockets per platoon
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	20 grenades per platoon
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	20 fuses per platoon
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	10 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon

G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
HA21 Rocket, 21mm Sub-Caliber, M72AS Trai	3 rockets per platoon
HA29 Rckt 66mm HE, M72A7, LAW W/GRAZE	3 rockets per platoon
L305 SIGNAL , ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A	3 signals per platoon
L307 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L314 Signal, Illumination Ground Green St	3 signals per platoon
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M	3 projectiles per platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course  
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** This event can be trained through use of the IIT.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** An area to patrol from may be an established patrol base, a COP, a FOB, a defensive position, etc.

---

**INF-MAN-5302:** Conduct a combat patrol (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, attachments, a mission and commander's intent.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent while seeking direct contact.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Task organize.
4. Integrate attachments as required.
5. Integrate fires.
6. Prep for combat.
7. Execute command and control.
8. Conduct a passage of lines.
9. Move to the objective rally point as necessary.
10. Execute immediate actions as necessary.
11. Execute actions of the objective.
12. Conduct information collection.
13. Consolidate as necessary.
14. Return to the objective rally point as necessary.
15. Re-enter friendly lines.
16. Conduct post combat actions.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

INF-MAN-4303  
INF-MAN-4301

INF-MAN-5304

INF-MAN-4002

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
3. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	20 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	800 rounds per weapon
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	800 rounds per unit
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	120 rounds per Marine
A358 Cartridge, 9mm TP-T M939 for AT-4 Tr	1 round per weapon
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 signals per weapon
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 signals per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	2 signals per platoon
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 rounds per weapon
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	4 rounds per weapon
C995 Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT	3 rockets per platoon
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	20 grenades per platoon
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	20 fuses per platoon
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	10 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
HA21 Rocket, 21mm Sub-Caliber, M72AS Trai	3 rockets per platoon
HA29 Rckt 66mm HE, M72A7, LAW W/GRAZE	3 rockets per platoon
L305 SIGNAL , ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A	3 signals per platoon
L307 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	3 signals per platoon
L314 Signal, Illumination Ground Green St	3 signals per platoon
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M	3 projectiles per platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Combat patrol specific planning considerations; means of movement, task org {assault, support, security, hq}, withdrawal/MACO procedures, contingency plans.

---

**INF-MAN-5303:** Conduct a reconnaissance patrol (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, attachments, a mission and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To gather or confirm information while seeking to avoid direct combat with the enemy.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Task organize.
4. Integrate attachments as required.
5. Integrate fires.
6. Prep for combat.
7. Execute command and control.
8. Conduct a passage of lines.
9. Move to the objective rally point.
10. Execute immediate actions as necessary.
11. Conduct reconnaissance of the objective.
12. Return to the objective rally point.
13. Re-enter friendly lines.
14. Conduct post combat actions.

CHAINED EVENTS:

INF-MAN-4303

INF-MAN-5304

INF-MAN-4302

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
3. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	20 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	800 rounds per weapon
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	800 rounds per unit
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	120 rounds per Marine
A358 Cartridge, 9mm TP-T M939 for AT-4 Tr	1 round per weapon
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 signals per weapon
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 signals per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	2 signals per platoon
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 rounds per weapon
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	4 rounds per weapon
C995 Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT	3 rockets per platoon
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	20 grenades per platoon
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	20 fuses per platoon
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	10 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	3 grenades per platoon
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	3 grenades per platoon
HA21 Rocket, 21mm Sub-Caliber, M72AS Trai	3 rockets per platoon
HA29 Rckt 66mm HE, M72A7, LAW W/GRAZE	3 rockets per platoon

L305 SIGNAL, ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A 3 signals per platoon  
L307 Signal, Illumination Ground White St 3 signals per platoon  
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St 3 signals per platoon  
L314 Signal, Illumination Ground Green St 3 signals per platoon  
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M 3 projectiles per platoon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Recon specific planning considerations; means of movement, task org {assault, support, security, hq}, contingency plans, types of recon patrols are area, zone, and route.

---

INF-MAN-5304: Operate from a patrol base (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, an order, and an area of operations.

STANDARD: To support patrolling operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Integrate fires.
4. Conduct tactical logistics.
5. Prep for combat.
6. Move to patrol base.
7. Execute command and control.
8. Occupy the patrol base.
9. Maintain and improve all around security (S).
10. Position automatic weapons on most likely avenues of approach (A).
11. Improve fields of fire, obstacles, fire support plan, positions/entrenchment (FE).
12. Conduct continuing actions.
13. Conduct patrolling operations.

CHAINED EVENTS: INF-MAN-4303

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
3. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: A patrol base can be in urban, a FOB, in rear area, in enemy territory, etc. A patrol base can be overt or covert. Patrol bases can be in any environment but are relatively temporary. Patrol bases may be placed in isolation or behind friendly lines/at a forward operating base/firm base. Historically, a patrol base is located in a concealed position using existing terrain or structures for cover, is defensible, and is occupied for 48 hours or less, but may be in place for much longer.

---

INF-MAN-5401: Retain a cleared area (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, a mission, commander's intent, and an area cleared of insurgents.

STANDARD: To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent with minimum collateral damage to local opinion, personnel, or structures by separating insurgents from the local populace and denying them safe haven.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct intelligence preparation of the operating environment (IPOE).
2. Establish command and control.
3. Task organize for combined operations with HN security organizations.
4. Integrate joint, coalition, host nation and interagency capabilities and organizations.
5. Exchange liaisons with joint, coalition, host nation and interagency organizations.
6. Provide service and joint capabilities to coalition, interagency and host nation organizations.
7. Maintain a Civil Military Operations Center.
8. Maintain a persistent intelligence, surveillance and reconnaissance (ISR) capability to develop intelligence on insurgent activity.
9. Control, direct, coordinate, approve, modify or deny employment of organic and supporting arms.
10. Conduct combined action where feasible.
11. Assign combined forces geographic responsibility where feasible.
12. Transition U.S. positions, checkpoints and responsibilities to combined forces where feasible.
13. Conduct combined/HN civil military operations.
14. Transition detention facilities and the conduct of detainee operations.
15. Kill or capture high value targets.
16. Transition responsibility for securing lines of communication leading into or out of the cleared area.
17. Modify population and resource control measures as appropriate.
18. Conduct targeting of remaining active insurgents.
19. Target insurgent support structures.
20. Target key individuals and organizations for engagement.
21. Disrupt insurgents outside of the cleared area.
22. Conduct the full spectrum of information operations (PSYOP, MILDEC, OPSEC, EW, CNA).

23. Minimize U.S. presence and promote local HN security organizations.
24. Assign HN security forces geographic responsibility where feasible.
25. Transition combined positions, checkpoints and responsibilities to HN forces where feasible.
26. Provide selective access to coalition enablers.
27. Transition population and resource control measures to HN authority.
28. Transition all security responsibilities to HN forces and authority when HN security and governance capacity is proven capable of managing internal threats to stability.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Company/Platoon Operations
1. FM 3-07 Stability Operations (2008)
2. MCIP 3-33.01 Small Unit Leaders Guide to Counterinsurgency
3. MCWP 3-33.5 Counterinsurgency Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**INF-MAN-5402:** Train foreign forces (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, a mission, a commander's intent, and foreign forces.

**STANDARD:** To enhance the effectiveness of foreign security forces in conducting operations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Determine method for advising foreign military forces (embedded training team or unit partnership).
2. Identify personnel and equipment requirements for advisor staff.
3. Screen advisors.
4. Provide relevant training to advisors.
5. Ensure adequate force protection for advisors.
6. Develop support/manning/supply plans in support of advisory team.
7. Develop plan for information sharing.
8. Develop campaign plan for military partnering, coordination measures, and transfer of authority as required.
9. Select and conduct missions and tasks to build successes/confidence.
10. Conduct after action reviews.
11. Identify potential leaders.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-05.137 Army Special Operations Forces Foreign Internal Defense
2. FM 3-07 Stability Operations (2008)
3. MCIP 3-33.01 Small Unit Leaders Guide to Counterinsurgency
4. MCWP 3-33.5 Counterinsurgency Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: This event can be trained through use of the IIT and Role Players.

---

INF-MGUN-5001: Provide offensive fires (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: This event is designed for a machinegun unit to support all types of offensive operations.

CONDITION: Given an order, a machinegun unit, a supported unit scheme of maneuver, while operating in the full range of environmental conditions.

STANDARD: To meet commander's intent and to support the unit's scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Conduct tactical logistics.
4. Prepare for combat operations.
5. Execute movement.
6. Occupy firing positions.
7. Improve positions as necessary.
8. Issue/receive fire commands.
9. Execute signal plan.
10. Determine effects on target(s).
11. Shift fires as necessary.
12. Displace units as necessary.
13. Consolidate.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0331-EMPL-2013	INF-MGUN-3001	0331-EMPL-2010
0331-EMPL-2008	0331-EMPL-2005	0331-EMPL-2003
0331-EMPL-2001	0331-EMPL-1007	0331-EMPL-1006
0331-WPNS-1009	0331-WPNS-1004	0331-WPNS-1003
0331-WPNS-1002	0331-M2-1010	0331-M2-1009
0331-M2-1008	0331-M2-1005	0331-M2-1004
0331-M2-1003	0331-M2-1001	0331-M2-1002
0331-MMG-1015	0331-MMG-1014	0331-MMG-1013
0331-MMG-1004	0331-MMG-1001	0331-MK19-1008
0331-MK19-1007	0331-MK19-1006	0331-MK19-1004
0331-MK19-1003	0331-MK19-1002	0331-MK19-1001
0331-LMG-1008	0331-LMG-1007	0331-LMG-1006
0331-LMG-1004	0331-LMG-1003	0331-LMG-1001
INF-MGUN-4005	INF-MGUN-4003	INF-MGUN-4002
INF-MGUN-4001	0331-EMPL-2011	

**RELATED EVENTS:**

INF-MAN-4204                      INF-MAN-5207                      INF-FSPT-5001  
INF-FSPT-4001                      INF-MAN-5001

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.68 Light and Medium machineguns
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machineguns and Machinegun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	800 rounds per weapon
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	800 rounds per Team
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	600 rounds per weapon
BA21 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK281 Mod 1	168 rounds per weapon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range  
Facility Code 17582 Automated Multipurpose Machine Gun Range (MPMG)  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** If range conditions require or permit, the following DODICs may be substituted for DODICs listed in the ammunition requirements (amounts remain the same as those listed): A143 7.62 ball M80 linked for A131 A151 7.62 4/1 link overhead fire for A131 A555 Caliber .50 Ball Link for A576B542 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin for BA21

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This covers offense operations while mounted or dismounted. Actions on the objective may include execution of engagement criteria and application of target precedence. This event includes fires that are direct by line of sight or through concealment or indirect by alignment and observer.
2. The full range of environmental conditions includes daylight, limited visibility, urban, rural, littoral, arctic, jungle, mountain, etc.
3. The ammunition allocated for this event is used to support a heavy machinegun platoon/section or a medium machinegun section.

---

**INF-MGUN-5002:** Provide defensive fires (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This event is designed for a machinegun unit to support all types of defensive operations.

**CONDITION:** Given an order, a machinegun unit, an area to defend, and a supported unit scheme of maneuver, while operating in the full range of environmental conditions.

**STANDARD:** To meet commander's intent and to support the unit's scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Prepare for combat operations.
4. Execute movement.
5. Recon tentative firing positions.
6. Occupy defensive positions.
7. Prepare defensive positions.
8. Issue/receive fire commands.
9. Execute signal plan.
10. Engage targets.
11. Control fires as directed.
12. Utilize alternate or supplementary positions as necessary.
13. Prepare for follow on missions.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0331-EMPL-1007	INF-MGUN-4001	0331-EMPL-1002
0331-EMPL-1001	0331-EMPL-2013	0331-EMPL-2012
0331-EMPL-2010	0331-EMPL-2008	0331-EMPL-2005
0331-EMPL-2003	0331-EMPL-2002	0331-EMPL-2001
0331-WPNS-1009	0331-WPNS-1004	0331-WPNS-1003
0331-WPNS-1002	0331-M2-1010	0331-M2-1009
0331-M2-1008	0331-M2-1004	0331-M2-1003
0331-M2-1002	0331-M2-1001	0331-M2-1005
0331-MMG-1025	0331-MMG-1015	0331-MMG-1014
0331-MMG-1013	0331-MMG-1004	0331-MMG-1001
0331-MK19-1001	0331-MK19-1008	0331-MK19-1007
0331-MK19-1006	0331-MK19-1004	0331-MK19-1003
0331-MK19-1002	0331-LMG-1008	0331-LMG-1007
0331-LMG-1006	0331-LMG-1004	0331-LMG-1003
0331-LMG-1001	INF-MGUN-5003	INF-MGUN-3001
INF-MGUN-4006	INF-MGUN-4004	INF-MGUN-4002
0331-EMPL-1006		

**RELATED EVENTS:**

INF-MAN-4101	INF-MAN-5102	INF-FSPT-5001
INF-FSPT-4001	INF-MAN-5101	

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.27 MK19 40MM Grenade Machine Gun MOD 3
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine gun, Caliber .50, HB M2
3. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machinegun, Caliber .50, HB M2
4. FM 3-22.68 Light and Medium machineguns
5. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
6. MCWP 3-15.1 Machineguns and Machinegun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	800 rounds per weapon
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	800 rounds per squad
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	600 rounds per weapon
BA21 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK281 Mod 1	168 rounds per weapon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17580 Machine Gun Transition Range  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This covers defense mounted and dismounted operations. Actions in the defense may include execution of engagement criteria and application of target precedence. This event includes fires that are direct by line of sight or through concealment or indirect by alignment and observer.
2. The full range of environmental conditions includes daylight, limited visibility, urban, rural, littoral, arctic, jungle, mountain, etc.
3. The ammunition allocated for this event is used to support a heavy machinegun platoon/section or a medium machinegun section.

---

INF-MGUN-5003: Occupy firing positions (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an order, and a supported units scheme of maneuver.

STANDARD: To provide fires in support of the scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Maintain security.
2. Coordinate moving/stationary unit contingency plans as necessary.
3. Reconnoiter tentative firing positions.
4. Select firing position(s).
5. Set conditions for occupation.
6. Move to firing positions.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0331-EMPL-2005	INF-MGUN-4001	0331-EMPL-2002
0331-EMPL-2001	0331-EMPL-1002	0331-EMPL-1001
0331-WPNS-1009	0331-WPNS-1004	0331-M2-1005
0331-M2-1004	0331-M2-1003	0331-M2-1002
0331-MK19-1004	0331-MK19-1003	0331-MK19-1002
INF-MGUN-3001	INF-MGUN-4002	0331-EMPL-2003

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-22.27 MK19
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine gun, Caliber .50, HB M2
3. FM 3-22.68 Light and Medium machineguns
4. MCWP 3-15.1 Machineguns and Machinegun Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

INF-MGUN-5004: Conduct motorized operations (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an order, a mounted machinegun unit, and a supported unit scheme of maneuver, while operating in the full range of environmental conditions.

STANDARD: To meet commander's intent and to support the unit's scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Issue/receive the order.
4. Prepare for combat operations.
5. Screen forward, flank, or rear of a moving unit.
6. Utilize visual/radio communications.
7. Maintain all around security.
8. Execute tactical logistics as required.
9. Execute contingency plans as required.
10. React to threats.
11. Conduct follow-on missions.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0331-EMPL-1007	INF-MGUN-4003	0331-EMPL-2012
0331-EMPL-2011	0331-EMPL-2008	0331-WPNS-1009
0331-WPNS-1003	0331-WPNS-1002	0331-M2-1005
0331-M2-1004	0331-M2-1003	0331-M2-1001
0331-M2-1010	0331-M2-1009	0331-M2-1008
0331-MMG-1025	0331-MMG-1015	0331-MMG-1014
0331-MMG-1013	0331-MMG-1004	0331-MMG-1001
0331-MK19-1008	0331-MK19-1007	0331-MK19-1006
0331-MK19-1004	0331-MK19-1003	0331-MK19-1001
0331-LMG-1008	0331-LMG-1007	0331-LMG-1004
0331-LMG-1006	0331-LMG-1003	0331-LMG-1001
INF-MGUN-4006	INF-MGUN-4005	INF-MGUN-4004
0331-EMPL-2013		

RELATED EVENTS:

INF-MAN-4204	INF-MAN-4101	INF-MAN-4004
INF-MAN-4002	INF-MAN-4001	INF-FSPT-5001
INF-MAN-5101	INF-MAN-5004	INF-MAN-5002
INF-MAN-5001	INF-FSPT-4001	INF-MAN-5102

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-22.27 MK19
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine gun, Caliber .50, HB M2
3. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machinegun, Caliber .50, HB M2
4. FM 3-22.68 Light and Medium machineguns
5. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
6. MCWP 3-15.1 Machineguns and Machinegun Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: The full range of environmental conditions includes daylight, limited visibility, urban, rural, littoral, arctic, jungle, mountain, etc.

---

INF-MORT-5001: Provide indirect fires (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a mission, a commander's intent, and a supported unit(s) scheme of maneuver, while operating in the full range of environmental conditions.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Provide forward observers to the unit as required.
4. Conduct tactical logistics.
5. Prepare for combat operations.
6. Execute movement.
7. Conduct hip shoot, as necessary.
8. Occupy firing positions.
9. Provide local security for the mortar platoon.
10. Operate split section/platoon, as necessary.
11. Lay mortars.
12. Improve positions.
13. Receive call for fire from supported unit.
14. Prepare and issue fire commands to the gun line.
15. Adjust fires as necessary.
16. Execute signal plan.
17. Fire standard missions as a section/platoon.
18. Fire special missions as a section/platoon.
19. Displace by echelon, as necessary.
20. Consolidate.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0341-FDC-2016	0341-60mm-1001	0341-FDC-2002
0341-FDC-2001	0341-FDC-2014	0341-FDC-2011
0341-FDC-2010	0341-FDC-2009	0341-FDC-2008
0341-FDC-2007	0341-FDC-2006	0341-FDC-2005
0341-FDC-2004	0341-FDC-2003	0341-FDC-2020
0341-FDC-2019	0341-FDC-2018	0341-FDC-2017
0341-FDC-2013	0341-FDC-2012	0341-WPNS-2009
0341-WPNS-2008	0341-WPNS-2007	0341-WPNS-2006
0341-WPNS-2005	0341-WPNS-2004	0341-WPNS-2003
0341-WPNS-2002	0341-WPNS-2001	0341-WPNS-1009
0341-WPNS-1008	0341-WPNS-1007	0341-WPNS-1006

0341-WPNS-1005	0341-WPNS-1004	0341-WPNS-1003
0341-WPNS-1002	0341-WPNS-1001	INF-MORT-4004
INF-MORT-4001	INF-MORT-5006	INF-MORT-5005
INF-MORT-5004	INF-MORT-5003	INF-MORT-5002
0341-81mm-1005	0341-81mm-1004	0341-81mm-1003
0341-81mm-1002	0341-81mm-1001	0341-60mm-1008
0341-60mm-1007	0341-60mm-1006	0341-60mm-1004
0341-60mm-1003	0341-60mm-1002	0341-FDC-2015

**RELATED EVENTS:**

INF-MAN-4101	INF-MAN-4001	INF-MAN-5102
INF-MAN-5101	INF-FSPT-5001	INF-MAN-5003
INF-MAN-5002	INF-MAN-5001	INF-FSPT-4001
INF-MAN-5004		

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 7-90 Tactical Employment of Mortars
2. MCRP 3-15.2A Mortars
3. MCRP 3-15.2B Mortar Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
BA16 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M720A1	16 rounds per weapon
B647 Cartridge, 60mm Illuminating M721	12 rounds per weapon
BA14 Cartridge, 60mm Smoke White Phosphor	12 rounds per weapon
C869 Cartridge, 81mm HE M889/M889A1 with	16 rounds per weapon
C870 Cartridge, 81mm Smoke Red Phosphorus	12 rounds per weapon
C871 Cartridge, 81mm Illuminating M853A1	12 rounds per weapon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training this event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This event applies to supporting offensive, defensive, patrolling, and urban operations as well as conducted with or without vehicle assets.
2. Tactical logistics for mortar live fire is pre-staging and combat loading vehicles/packs with ammo as well as coordinating tactical resupply.
3. Split section/platoon considerations include tactical fire direction, communication deconfliction for conduct of fire nets/command and control net, echelon of movement, logistics, overwatch, firing positions, etc. in support of the unit(s) scheme of maneuver.

---

**INF-MORT-5002:** Occupy a mortar position (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given an order, and a supported unit's scheme of maneuver.

**STANDARD:** To provide indirect fires in support of the scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Maintain security
2. Coordinate moving/stationary unit contingency plans, as necessary.
3. Recon tentative firing positions.
4. Select firing positions.
5. Set conditions for occupation.
6. Move to firing positions.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0341-WPNS-1009	0341-60mm-1001	0341-WPNS-2008
0341-WPNS-2007	0341-WPNS-2006	0341-WPNS-2005
0341-WPNS-2004	0341-WPNS-2003	0341-WPNS-2002
INF-MORT-4001	0341-81mm-1004	0341-81mm-1003
0341-81mm-1002	0341-81mm-1001	0341-60mm-1004
0341-60mm-1003	0341-60mm-1002	0341-WPNS-1004

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 7-90 Tactical Employment of Mortars
2. MCRP 3-15.2A Mortars
3. MCRP 3-15.2B Mortar Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**INF-MORT-5003:** Fire standard missions as a mortar section/platoon (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given established firing positions, priorities of fire, a target list worksheet, a target(s), a forward observer(s), and with or without a fire direction center.

**STANDARD:** To achieve desired effects on target without incurring friendly casualties.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Maintain security.
2. Determine current location.
3. Determine direction of fire.
4. Determine referred deflection.
5. Review priorities of fire.
6. Review preplanned targets from target list worksheet.
7. Generate preplanned target firing data.
8. Issue preplanned priority target fire commands.
9. Maintain readiness to provide on-call priority fires.
10. Receive observer location, as necessary.
11. Receive a call for fire.
12. Determine target weaponeering.

13. Transmit message to observer(s).
14. Compute firing data.
15. Issue fire commands.
16. Manage ammunition.
17. Determine observer to target direction, as necessary.
18. Adjust fire, as necessary.
19. Fire for effect.
20. Receive RREMS (refinements, record as target, end of mission, surveillance) from observer.
21. End fire mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 7-90 Tactical Employment of Mortars
2. MCRP 3-15.2A Mortars
3. MCRP 3-15.2B Mortar Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
BA16 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M720A1	16 rounds per weapon
B647 Cartridge, 60mm Illuminating M721	12 rounds per weapon
BA14 Cartridge, 60mm Smoke White Phosphor	12 rounds per weapon
C869 Cartridge, 81mm HE M889/M889A1 with	16 rounds per weapon
C870 Cartridge, 81mm Smoke Red Phosphorus	12 rounds per weapon
C871 Cartridge, 81mm Illuminating M853A1	12 rounds per weapon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** This event can be augmented through use of CACTUS.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This event encompasses the following fire missions: point, linear, illumination and coordinated illumination.

1. Engage a point target - 7 rounds Section/11 rounds Platoon.
2. Engage a linear target - 20 rounds for a standard 400m target length.
3. Fire illumination - 4 rounds.
4. Fire coordinated illumination - 8 total illum 6 total HE Section/ 10 HE Platoon.

---

**INF-MORT-5004:** Fire special missions as a mortar section/platoon (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given established firing positions, priorities of fire, a target list worksheet, a target(s), a forward observer(s), and with or without a fire direction center.

**STANDARD:** To achieve desired effects on target (without incurring/with minimal) friendly casualties.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Maintain security
2. Determine current location.
3. Determine direction of fire.
4. Determine referred deflection.
5. Review priorities of fire.
6. Review pre-planned targets.
7. Generate pre-planned target firing data.
8. Issue pre-planned priority target fire commands.
9. Maintain readiness to provide on-call priority fires.
10. Receive observer location, as necessary.
11. Receive call for fire.
12. Determine friendly positions.
13. Determine danger close mortar, as necessary.
14. Determine target weaponeering.
15. Transmit message to observer.
16. Compute firing data.
17. Issue fire commands.
18. Manage ammunition.
19. Determine observer to target direction.
20. Adjust fire by creeping or bracketing, as necessary.
21. Fire for effect.
22. Receive RREMS (refine, record as target, end of mission, surveillance) from observer.
23. End the fire mission.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 7-90 Tactical Employment of Mortars
2. MCRP 3-15.2A Mortars
3. MCRP 3-15.2B Mortar Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
BA16 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M720A1	16 rounds per weapon
B643 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M888	16 rounds per weapon
B647 Cartridge, 60mm Illuminating M721	12 rounds per weapon
BA14 Cartridge, 60mm Smoke White Phosphor	12 rounds per weapon
C869 Cartridge, 81mm HE M889/M889A1 with	16 rounds per weapon
C870 Cartridge, 81mm Smoke Red Phosphorus	12 rounds per weapon
C871 Cartridge, 81mm Illuminating M853A1	12 rounds per weapon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training this event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This event encompasses the following fire missions: Quick smoke, immediate suppression/smoke, registration, final protective fire, adjusting the standard sheaf, and suppression of enemy air defenses.

1. Fire quick smoke - 9 rounds RP/3 HE.
2. Immediate smoke - 4 rounds Section/ 8 rounds Platoon (HE).
3. Immediate suppression - 4 rounds Section/ 8 rounds Platoon (HE).

4. FPF - 20 rounds Section/ 40 rounds Platoon.

---

INF-MORT-5005: Perform reciprocal lay using the mortar sight (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a declinated compass, boresighted mortars and a mortar position during daylight or darkness.

STANDARD: All guns in the platoon are laid to within one mil.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The gun line is laid in the general direction of fire.
2. One gun is laid using a declinated M2 compass.
3. Remaining guns are laid per unit SOP using the first gun as the aiming point.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-15.2B Mortar Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range

---

INF-MORT-5006: Lay mortars using a M2 Aiming Circle (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a declinated M2 Aiming Circle, boresighted mortars and a mortar position during daylight or darkness.

STANDARD: To reduce potential error in mortar gunnery by ensuring all mortars are laid to within one mil.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Emplace mortars oriented on the direction of fire post.
2. Emplace aiming circle.
3. Perform reciprocal lay off of aiming circle.
4. Refer and realign each mortar to the referred deflection.
5. Prepare for fire missions.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0341-WPNS-1004                      0341-WPNS-2004                      0341-WPNS-2005  
0341-WPNS-2006

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-15.2B Mortar Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range

---

INF-MORT-5007: Operate by split platoon (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a mission that requires fire support of two (2) independent missions or continual fire support for a fast moving attack.

STANDARD: To provide indirect fires that support the unit's scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Each section moves as an independent element.
2. Designate firing position for each section that supports supported unit scheme of maneuver.
3. Status and location of both sections is monitored.
4. At least one unit can provide indirect fires to the ground unit at all times.
5. The appropriate section responds to requests for fire according to its mission.
6. Section Fire Direction Center (FDC) computes data and issues fire commands for their own mortars.
7. When both sections are supporting the same mission, sections compute their own firing data for fire missions received by the other section.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-15.2A Mortars
2. MCRP 3-15.2B Mortar Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This task should be evaluated in conjunction with relevant firing tasks, whenever possible (hip shoots, simultaneous missions, etc.). It can, however, be executed and evaluated in a maneuver area only.
  2. Each section should be required to displace at least twice, with the platoon maintaining the ability to provide continuous fire support.
-

INF-TRNG-5001: Conduct unit readiness planning (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: Given a units METL, commanders training guidance, commander's training strategy, a battalion long range training plan, and a company mid range training plan.

STANDARD: To develop combat readiness.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Identify collective training standards and individual training standards that support the unit METL/commanders training strategy.
2. Conduct platoon training assessment.
3. Determine training priorities.
4. Develop a short range training plan.
5. Publish LOI's.
6. Develop weekly training schedules.
7. Coordinate unit training.
8. Develop materials.
9. Conduct operational risk assessment.
10. Conduct training.
11. Conduct evaluations.
12. Conduct after-action reviews.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
2. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
3. MCRP 5-12.1C Risk Management (Feb 01)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: This event can be trained through use of the IIT.

---

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 7

SQUAD/FIRE TEAM COLLECTIVE EVENTS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE. . . . .	7000	7-2
EVENT CODING . . . . .	7001	7-2
INDEX OF SQUAD/FIRE TEAM COLLECTIVE EVENTS . . . . .	7002	7-2
SQUAD COLLECTIVE EVENTS. . . . .	7003	7-4
FIRE TEAM COLLECTIVE EVENTS. . . . .	7004	7-47

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 7

SQUAD/FIRE TEAM COLLECTIVE EVENTS

7000. **PURPOSE.** This chapter contains collective training events for the Infantry Occupational Field.

7001. **EVENT CODING.** Events in this T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12-character, 3-field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one. This field represents the community. This chapter contains the following community codes:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
INF	Infantry

b. Field two. This field represents the functional/duty area. This chapter contains the following functional/duty areas:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
0317	Scout Sniper
ANTI	Anti-Armor
ASLT	Assault
FSPT	Fire Support
INT	Intelligence
MAN	Maneuver
MGUN	Machineguns
MORT	Mortars
TRNG	Training

c. Field three. This field provides the level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing of events. This chapter contains the following event levels:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
4000	Squad Level
3000	Fire Team Level

7002. INDEX OF SQUAD AND FIRE TEAM COLLECTIVE EVENTS

EVENT CODE	E-CODED	EVENT	PAGE
<b>SQUAD/4000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS</b>			
<b>ANTI-ARMOR</b>			
INF-ANTI-4001		Provide offensive fires (D)	7-4
INF-ANTI-4002		Provide defensive fires (D)	7-5
INF-ANTI-4003		Conduct Motorized Operations (D)	7-7
<b>ASSAULT</b>			
INF-ASLT-4001		Provide offensive fires (D)	7-8

INF-ASLT-4002		Provide defensive fires (D)	7-10
INF-ASLT-4003		Employ breaching capabilities (D)	7-11
<b>FIRE SUPPORT</b>			
INF-FSPT-4001		Integrate fires (D)	7-12
<b>INTELLIGENCE</b>			
INF-INT-4001		Conduct Tactical Site Exploitation (TSE) (B)	7-13
<b>MANEUVER</b>			
INF-MAN-4001		Conduct a ground attack (B)	7-14
INF-MAN-4002		Conduct an ambush (B)	7-16
INF-MAN-4003		Integrate Armor (D)	7-17
INF-MAN-4004		Clear a Fortified Position (D)	7-18
INF-MAN-4101		Conduct a defense (B)	7-20
INF-MAN-4201		Conduct assembly area actions (D)	7-21
INF-MAN-4202		Conduct a passage of lines (D)	7-21
INF-MAN-4203		Breach an obstacle (B)	7-22
INF-MAN-4204		Support by fire/overwatch (B)	7-23
INF-MAN-4205		Consolidate (D)	7-25
INF-MAN-4206		Conduct a link up (D)	7-26
INF-MAN-4207		Detain personnel (D)	7-27
INF-MAN-4208		Conduct casualty evacuation (D)	7-28
INF-MAN-4209		React to a meeting engagement (B)	7-28
INF-MAN-4210		React to snipers in an urban environment (B)	7-29
INF-MAN-4211		Establish a Snap Vehicle Checkpoint (B)	7-30
INF-MAN-4212		Conduct personnel/vehicle checkpoint operations (B)	7-31
INF-MAN-4213		Conduct a cordon and search (B)	7-32
INF-MAN-4301		Conduct a combat patrol (B)	7-32
INF-MAN-4302		Conduct a reconnaissance patrol (B)	7-34
INF-MAN-4303		Operate from a patrol base (B)	7-35
<b>MACHINEGUNS</b>			
INF-MGUN-4001		Occupy a medium/light machinegun firing position (B)	7-36
INF-MGUN-4002		Occupy a heavy machinegun squad firing position (B)	7-37
INF-MGUN-4003		Employ a medium/light machinegun squad in support of offensive operations (B)	7-38
INF-MGUN-4004		Employ a medium/light machinegun squad in support of defensive operations (B)	7-39
INF-MGUN-4005		Employ a heavy machinegun squad in support of offensive operations (B)	7-41
INF-MGUN-4006		Employ a heavy machinegun squad in support of defensive operations (B)	7-42
<b>MORTARS</b>			
INF-MORT-4001		Emplace a mortar squad (D)	7-43
INF-MORT-4002		Employ a 60mm mortar squad in support of company operations (D)	7-44
INF-MORT-4003		Employ an 81mm mortar squad in support of battalion operations (D)	7-45
INF-MORT-4004		Engage targets as a mortar squad (D)	7-46
<b>FIRE TEAM/3000 LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS</b>			
<b>SCOUT SNIPER</b>			
INF-0317-3001		Conduct sniper team operations (D)	7-47
INF-0317-3002		Engage targets with coordinated shooting on command (D)	7-48

INF-0317-3003		Execute sniper team immediate action drills (D)	7-49
<b>ASSAULT</b>			
INF-ASLT-3001		Provide offensive fires (D)	7-50
INF-ASLT-3002		Provide defensive fires (D)	7-51
INF-ASLT-3003		Conduct an explosive breach (D)	7-52
INF-ASLT-3004		Conduct a mechanical breach (D)	7-53
INF-ASLT-3005		Reduce an obstacle (D)	7-54
INF-ASLT-3006		Emplace obstacle(s) (D)	7-55
<b>MANEUVER</b>			
INF-MAN-3001		Conduct fire and movement (B)	7-56
INF-MAN-3002		Clear a room (D)	7-57
INF-MAN-3101		Conduct a defense (B)	7-59
INF-MAN-3102		Conduct a listening post/observation post (D)	7-60
INF-MAN-3201		Conduct a passage of lines (D)	7-61
INF-MAN-3202		Breach an obstacle (B)	7-62
INF-MAN-3203		Support by fire/overwatch (B)	7-64
INF-MAN-3204		Consolidate (B)	7-65
INF-MAN-3205		Conduct a link up (B)	7-66
INF-MAN-3206		Detain personnel (D)	7-67
INF-MAN-3207		Conduct tactical casualty care (D)	7-68
INF-MAN-3301		Conduct a patrol (B)	7-69
<b>MACHINEGUNS</b>			
INF-MGUN-3001		Occupy a firing position (D)	7-70

**7003. SQUAD COLLECTIVE EVENTS**

**INF-ANTI-4001:** Provide offensive fires (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a mission, a commander's intent, and a supported unit scheme of maneuver, while operating in the full range of environmental conditions.

**STANDARD:** To support the unit's scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Conduct tactical logistics.
4. Prepare for combat operations.
5. Plan for diversions.
6. Conduct movement.
7. Occupy cold/hot firing positions.
8. Identify target by precedence.
9. Engage targets.
10. Improve positions as necessary.
11. Execute screening/signal plan.
12. Determine effects on target(s).
13. Re-engage target(s) as necessary.
14. Displace units as necessary.
15. Consolidate.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0352-LEAD-2001	0352-MAW-1001	0352-EMPL-2001
0352-EMPL-1002	0352-EMPL-2003	0352-MOBL-1001
0352-MOBL-2001	0352-HAW-1010	0352-HAW-1009
0352-HAW-1008	0352-HAW-1006	0352-HAW-1003
0352-HAW-1002	0352-HAW-1001	0352-MAW-1004
0352-MAW-1003	0352-MAW-1002	0352-EMPL-2002

**RELATED EVENTS:**

INF-FSPT-4001                      INF-MAN-4204

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-21.91 Tactical Employment of Anti-armor Platoons, Companies and Battalions
2. FM 3-22.34 TOW Weapon System
3. FM 3-22.37 Javelin Medium Anti-armor Weapon System
4. TM 09397B-12/1 Operator and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Javelin
5. TM 11581A-OR Operator and Organizational Maintenance Manual for M41 Saber System
6. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
7. TM 9-1425-923-12 Saber System (Improved Target Acquisition System) M41A
8. TM 9-2320-387-10 Operator Maintenance Manual for Truck; Utility: Cargo/Troop Carrier, 2-1/4 Ton, 4X4

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
PM93 Guided Missile, Surface Attack (Jave	1 missiles per platoon
WH03 BGM-71D-5, Guided Missile, Surface A	1 missiles per platoon
WH05 Guided Missile, BTM-71D-3B (TOW-1 Pr	1 missiles per platoon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17640 Antiarmor Tracking And Live-Fire Range

**EQUIPMENT:**

1. M220E4 TOW weapon system.
2. M41A4 Saber system.
3. M98A2 Javelin medium anti-armor weapon.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This event covers offense, patrolling, mounted and dismounted operations. Actions on the objective may include execution of engagement criteria, application of target precedence, completion of range cards, fortification of positions, integration of fires with obstacles, etc. This event includes fires that are direct by line of sight or through concealment.
2. The full range of environmental conditions includes daylight, limited visibility, urban, rural, littoral, arctic, jungle, mountain, etc. Mounted or dismounted/ground mounted.

---

**INF-ANTI-4002:** Provide defensive fires (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a mission, a commander's intent, and a supported unit scheme of maneuver, while operating in the full range of environmental conditions.

STANDARD: To support the unit's scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Conduct tactical logistics.
4. Prepare for combat operations.
5. Plan for diversions.
6. Conduct movement.
7. Occupy cold/hot firing positions.
8. Provide continuous observation.
9. Provide far target location.
10. Identify target by precedence.
11. Engage targets.
12. Improve positions as necessary.
13. Execute screening/signal plan.
14. Determine effects on target(s).
15. Re-engage target(s) as necessary.
16. Displace units as necessary.
17. Consolidate.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0352-LEAD-2001	0352-MAW-1001	0352-EMPL-1002
0352-EMPL-1001	0352-EMPL-2003	0352-EMPL-2002
0352-EMPL-2001	0352-MOBL-1001	0352-MOBL-2001
0352-HAW-1010	0352-HAW-1009	0352-HAW-1008
0352-HAW-1006	0352-HAW-1005	0352-HAW-1003
0352-HAW-1002	0352-HAW-1001	0352-MAW-1004
0352-MAW-1003	0352-MAW-1002	0352-EMPL-1003

RELATED EVENTS: INF-FSPT-4001

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-21.91 Tactical Employment of Anti-armor Platoons, Companies and Battalions
2. FM 3-22.34 TOW Weapon System
3. FM 3-22.37 Javelin Medium Anti-armor Weapon System
4. TM 09397B-12/1 Operator and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Javelin
5. TM 11581A-OR Operator and Organizational Maintenance Manual for M41 Saber System
6. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
7. TM 9-1425-923-12 Saber System (Improved Target Acquisition System) M41A
8. TM 9-2320-387-10 Operator Maintenance Manual for Truck; Utility: Cargo/Troop Carrier, 2-1/4 Ton, 4X4

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
PM93 Guided Missile, Surface Attack (Jave	1 missiles per platoon
WH03 BGM-71D-5, Guided Missile, Surface A	1 missiles per platoon
WH05 Guided Missile, BTM-71D-3B (TOW-1 Pr	1 missiles per platoon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17640 Antiarmor Tracking And Live-Fire Range  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

EQUIPMENT:

1. M220E4 TOW weapon system.
2. M41A4 Saber system.
3. M98A2 Javelin medium anti-armor weapon.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event covers defense, mounted and dismounted operations. Actions on the objective may include execution of engagement criteria, application of, completion of range cards, fortification of positions, integration of fires with obstacles, etc. This event includes fires that are direct by line of sight or through concealment.
2. This event covers the full range of environmental conditions includes daylight, limited visibility, urban, rural, littoral, arctic, jungle, mountain, etc. Mounted or dismounted/ground mounted.

---

INF-ANTI-4003: Conduct Motorized Operations (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a mission, a commander's intent, and a supported unit scheme of maneuver, while operating in the full range of environmental conditions.

STANDARD: To support the unit's scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Prepare for combat operations.
2. Conduct traveling.
3. Conduct traveling overwatch.
4. Conduct bounding overwatch.
5. Conduct immediate actions.
6. Conduct down vehicle and recovery operations.
7. Conduct convoy security/escort.
8. Conduct link up/passage of lines.
9. Conduct route reconnaissance.
10. Conduct screening.
11. Conduct consolidation.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0352-LEAD-2001	0352-MAW-1001	0352-EMPL-1001
0352-EMPL-2003	0352-EMPL-2002	0352-EMPL-2001

0352-MOBL-1001	0352-MOBL-2001	0352-HAW-1010
0352-HAW-1009	0352-HAW-1008	0352-HAW-1006
0352-HAW-1005	0352-HAW-1003	0352-HAW-1002
0352-HAW-1001	0352-MAW-1004	0352-MAW-1003
0352-MAW-1002	0352-EMPL-1002	

**RELATED EVENTS:**

INF-ANTI-4002                      INF-FSPT-4001                      INF-ANTI-4001

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-21.91 Tactical Employment of Anti-armor Platoons, Companies and Battalions
2. FM 3-22.34 TOW Weapon System
3. FM 3-22.37 Javelin Medium Anti-armor Weapon System
4. TM 09397B-12/1 Operator and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Javelin
5. TM 11581A-OR Operator and Organizational Maintenance Manual for M41 Saber System
6. TM 11803A-OM Operator Manual, MATV
7. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
8. TM 9-1425-923-12 Saber System (Improved Target Acquisition System) M41A
9. TM 9-2320-387-10 Operator Maintenance Manual for Truck; Utility: Cargo/Troop Carrier, 2-1/4 Ton, 4X4

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17640 Antiarmor Tracking And Live-Fire Range

**EQUIPMENT:**

1. M220E4 TOW weapon system
2. M41A4 Saber system

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

1. Maneuver/Training area
2. CCS (Appendix D)
3. HEAT/MAET (Appendix D)

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This event covers offense, patrolling, mounted and dismounted operations. Actions on the objective may include execution of engagement criteria, application of target precedence, completion of range cards, fortification of positions, integration of fires with obstacles, etc. This event includes fires that are direct by line of sight or through concealment.
2. This event applies to the full range of environmental conditions includes daylight, limited visibility, urban, rural, littoral, arctic, jungle, mountain, etc. Mounted or dismounted/ground mounted.

---

**INF-ASLT-4001:** Provide offensive fires (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an operations order, an assault squad, targets, and while wearing the assault load.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct mission analysis.
2. Assist in the development of the scheme of maneuver.
3. Task organize.
4. Direct the emplacement of the squad.
5. Coordinate with adjacent and supported units.
6. Engage targets using rockets.
7. Breach obstacles as directed.
8. Conduct demolitions as directed.
9. Displace to alternate or supplementary positions according to the scheme of maneuver.
10. Prepare for follow on missions.

CHAINED EVENTS:

INF-ASLT-3005	INF-ASLT-3003	INF-ASLT-3001
0351-SMAW-2003	0351-SMAW-2001	0351-SMAW-1010
0351-SMAW-1001	0351-SMAW-1007	0351-SMAW-1006
0351-SMAW-1005	0351-SMAW-1004	0351-SMAW-1003
0351-SMAW-1002	0351-SMAW-1008	

RELATED EVENTS:

INF-ASLT-3003	INF-ASLT-3001	INF-FSPT-4001
INF-MAN-4002	INF-MAN-4001	INF-MAN-4004

REFERENCES:

1. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
2. FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data - Field Expedient Charges
3. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
4. MCWP 3-15.5 Anti-armor Operations
5. TM 013750-13&P Operators Manual MK-7 MOD. 1 Anti-Personnel Obstacle Breaching System (APOBS)
6. TM 08673A-10/1 Launcher, Assault Rocket 83MM (SMAW) MK 153 MOD 0

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
AA54 Cartridge, 12 Gauge, Breaching, M103	6 rounds per weapon
AX11 Cartridge, 9mm Spotting Rifle MK212	7 rounds per weapon
FMPR Rocket, FOTS Multi-Purpose Round	1 per squad
M023 Charge, Demolition Block M112 1-1/4	16 charges per squad
M028 Demolition Kit, Bangalore Torpedo M1	1 charges per squad
M032 Charge, Demolition Block TNT 1-Pound	2 charges per squad
M130 Cap, Blasting Electric M6	50 blasting caps per squad
M131 Cap, Blasting Non-Electric M7	50 blasting caps per squad
M456 Cord, Detonating PETN Type I Class E	100 FT per squad
M670 Fuse, Blasting Time M700	50 FT per squad
M757 Charge, Assembly Demolition M183 Com	1 charges per squad
MN08 Igniter, Time Blasting Fuse w/shock t	50 igniters per squad
MN88 Cap, Blasting, Non-Electric, M21	50 FT per squad

MN79 Mine, Antipersonnel Obstacle Breachi 1 mines per squad

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17640 Antiarmor Tracking And Live-Fire Range

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Maneuver/Training area
2. ISMT
3. Mechanical breaching kit
4. MK 153 SMAW

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: If required, the following DODICs may be used:

FPTR Rocket, FOTS Practice Training Round for FMPR.  
MN08 Igniter, Time Blasting Fuze with Shock tube cap for MN88.

---

INF-ASLT-4002: Provide defensive fires (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an operations order, an assault squad, targets, and while wearing the assault load.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct mission analysis.
2. Assist in the development of the scheme of maneuver.
3. Task organize.
4. Direct the emplacement of the squad.
5. Coordinate with adjacent and supported units.
6. Engage targets using rockets.
7. Conduct demolitions as directed.
8. Displace to alternate or supplementary positions according to the scheme of maneuver.
9. Prepare for follow on missions.

CHAINED EVENTS:

INF-ASLT-3002	0351-SMAW-1010	0351-SMAW-1009
0351-SMAW-1008	0351-SMAW-1007	0351-SMAW-1006
0351-SMAW-2001	0351-SMAW-1004	0351-SMAW-1003
0351-SMAW-1002	0351-SMAW-1001	0351-SMAW-2003
0351-SMAW-1005		

RELATED EVENTS:

INF-ASLT-3003	INF-FSPT-4001	INF-MAN-4101
INF-ASLT-3001		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
2. FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data - Field Expedient Charges

3. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
4. TM 013750-13&P Operators Manual MK-7 MOD. 1 Anti-Personnel Obstacle Breaching System (APOBS)
5. TM 08673A-10/1 Launcher, Assault Rocket 83MM (SMAW) MK 153 MOD 0

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
AA54- Cartridge, 12 Gauge, Breaching, M103	6 rounds per weapon
AX11 Cartridge, 9mm Spotting Rifle MK212	7 rounds per weapon
FMPR Rocket, FOTS Multi-Purpose Round	1 per squad
J007 Mine, Antipersonnel M18A1 with Non-El	1 mines per squad
M023 Charge, Demolition Block M112 1-1/4	16 charges per squad
M028 Demolition Kit, Bangalore Torpedo M1	1 charges per squad
M032 Charge, Demolition Block TNT 1-Pound	2 charges per squad
M130 Cap, Blasting Electric M6	50 blasting caps per squad
M131 Cap, Blasting Non-Electric M7	50 blasting caps per squad
M456 Cord, Detonating PETN Type I Class E	100 FT per squad
M670 Fuse, Blasting Time M700	50 FT per squad
M757 Charge, Assembly Demolition M183 Com	1 charges per squad
MN08 Igniter, Time Blasting Fuse w/shock t	50 igniters per squad
MN88 Cap, Blasting, Non-Electric, M21	50 FT per squad
MN79 Mine, Antipersonnel Obstacle Breachi	1 mines per squad

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17640 Antiarmor Tracking And Live-Fire Range

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

1. Maneuver/Training area
2. ISMT
3. Mechanical breaching kit
4. MK 153 SMAW

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** If required, the following DODICs may be used:

FPTR Rocket, Practice Training Round for FMPR.  
MN08 Igniter, Time Blasting Fuze with Shock tube cap for MN88.

---

**INF-ASLT-4003:** Employ breaching capabilities (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a operations order, assault squad, obstacle(s), and breaching materials.

**STANDARD:** To support the scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct BAMCIS.
2. Assist in the development of the scheme of maneuver.

3. Receive brief.
4. Ensure conditions are set for breach. (SOS)
5. Conduct actions at the breach site. (R)
6. Support assault element through the breach site. (A)
7. Support follow-on unit movement through breach lanes.
8. Consolidate.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

INF-ASLT-3003	0351-DEMO-1001	INF-ASLT-3004
0351-APOB-2012	0351-APOB-2011	0351-APOB-2010
0351-APOB-2009	0351-APOB-2008	0351-APOB-2007
0351-APOB-2006	0351-APOB-2005	0351-APOB-2004
0351-APOB-2003	0351-APOB-2001	0351-DEMO-2012
0351-DEMO-1009	0351-DEMO-1008	0351-DEMO-1007
0351-DEMO-1006	0351-DEMO-1005	0351-DEMO-1004
0351-DEMO-1003	0351-DEMO-1002	INF-ASLT-3005

**RELATED EVENTS:**

INF-MAN-4203	INF-FSPT-4001	INF-MAN-4001
INF-MAN-4004		

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-34.214 Explosives and Demolitions
2. MCWP 3-15.5 Anti-armor Operations
3. TM 013750-13&P/B Anti-personnel Obstacle Breaching System MK MOD 1, MK7 MOD 2

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** This event can be trained through use of the IIT.

---

**INF-FSPT-4001:** Integrate fires (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, an order, a scheme of maneuver, and supporting arms available.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Confirm targets/scheduling.
3. Exercise command and control.
4. Conduct targeting.
5. Conduct weaponeering.
6. Deconflict battlespace geometry.
7. Execute engagement criteria.

8. Execute target precedence.
9. Determine effects of fires.
10. Refine accuracy.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

INF-ASLT-4002	INF-MGUN-4003	INF-ASLT-3002
INF-ASLT-3001	0300-OFF-1001	0311-OFF-2007
0311-OFF-2006	0311-OFF-2005	0311-OFF-2004
0311-OFF-2003	0311-OFF-2002	0311-OFF-2001
0300-WPNS-1004	0300-WPNS-1002	0300-MOUT-1002
0300-M203-1005	INF-MORT-4004	0311-M32-1005
0300-DEMO-1002	INF-MAN-4003	INF-MAN-4204
INF-MAN-3203	INF-MAN-3001	INF-ANTI-4002
INF-ANTI-4001	0300-DEF-1003	0311-DEF-1001
0311-DEF-2006	0311-DEF-2005	0311-DEF-2004
0311-DEF-2003	INF-MGUN-4006	INF-MGUN-4005
INF-MGUN-4004	INF-ASLT-4001	

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
3. MCWP 3-16.2 Procedures for the Marine Corps Fire Support

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Weaponeering is defined by "selecting the best supporting arms IOT attack the target considering availability and coordination requirements, weaponeering is selecting the appropriate weapon and munitions based on the desired effect and lethality and non-lethality of a specific munition" MCWP 3-16.
2. Targeting is "the process of selecting targets and matching the appropriate response to them, taking account of operational requirements and capabilities." JP 1-02
3. **Simulation support:** This event may also be conducted and/or supplemented by the use of a Category I or II simulation devices and a simulation device operator. SAVT is the preferred system.

---

**INF-INT-4001:** Conduct Tactical Site Exploitation (TSE) (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** While operating as a squad or serving as the search element participating in larger operations.

**STANDARD:** To obtain sensitive intelligence information to support mission accomplishment and commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct systemic search of an area, building, room, or vehicle.
2. Use PSD; Photographs, Statements, Diagrams to document all "finds" where and how items are found.
3. Collect all "finds" using best practices to minimize damage to evidentiary/intelligence value.
4. Document all "finds" using proper chain of custody and inventory documentation.
5. Consolidate all items after documenting where/how found.
6. Use Tactical Questioning (TQ) to complete details for evidence collection.
7. Ensure Site Exploitation (SE) minimizes damage for maximum intelligence and evidence value and method is appropriate to gain/maintain support and cooperation of occupants and other local civilians.
8. Effectively use SE kit as available (gloves, paper and plastic bags, tags, explosive residue kit, finger-print kit, biometric systems, etc.).
9. Ensure SE is prioritized and efficient to minimize time in the objective as appropriate.
10. Transport items and report debrief to higher IAW current local requirements (timelines, detainee paperwork, evidentiary rules) and to maximize intelligence/evidence value.

**REFERENCES:**

1. CALL 07-26 Tactical Site Exploitation and Cache Search Operations
2. ISBN: 9780160800863 USMC Site Exploitation: Evidence Collection - training support package
3. MCRP 3-31.4B Multi-service Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Cordon and Search Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training for this event can be augmented through use of the IIT, DVTE, and VBS2.

---

**INF-MAN-4001:** Conduct a ground attack (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, attachments, an order, while motorized, mechanized, or dismounted, and operating in the full range of environmental conditions, during daylight and limited visibility.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission and meet commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Task organize.
4. Integrate attachments as required.
5. Integrate fires.
6. Conduct tactical logistics.
7. Prep for combat (pre-combat actions).
8. Execute command and control.
9. Cross line of departure.

10. Breach obstacles as necessary.
11. Establish support by fire position(s).
12. Move to assault position.
13. Execute actions of the objective.
14. Consolidate.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

INF-ASLT-4003	INF-MGUN-4003	0311-OFF-2007
0311-OFF-2006	0311-OFF-2005	0311-OFF-2004
0311-OFF-2003	0311-OFF-2002	0311-OFF-2001
0311-MOUT-2001	INF-MORT-4004	INF-MAN-3001
INF-MAN-4204	INF-MAN-4203	INF-MAN-4004
INF-MAN-4003	INF-ANTI-4001	INF-MGUN-4005
INF-ASLT-4001		

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	20 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	800 rounds per weapon
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	800 rounds per unit
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	120 rounds per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	800 rounds per weapon
A143 Cartridge, 7.62mm Ball M80 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A151 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball/1 Tracer Li	800 rounds per weapon
A358 Cartridge, 9mm TP-T M939 for AT-4 Tr	1 round per weapon
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 signals per weapon
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 signals per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	2 signals per platoon
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 rounds per weapon
BA16 Cartridge, 60mm HE M720A1 w/Multi-Op	16 rounds per section
B643 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M888	16 rounds per section
B647 Cartridge, 60mm Illuminating M721	12 rounds per section
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	4 rounds per weapon
C995 Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT	1 rocket per squad
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	1 grenades per Marine
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	1 fuses per Marine
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	3 grenades per squad
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per squad
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	1 grenades per squad
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	1 grenades per squad
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	1 grenades per squad
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per squad
HA21 Rocket, 21mm Sub-Caliber, M72AS Trai	1 rocket per squad
HA29 Rckt 66mm HE, M72A7, LAW W/GRAZE	1 rocket per squad
FMPR Rocket, FOTS Multi-Purpose Round	1 per squad
FPTR Rocket, FOTS Practice Training Round	1 rocket per squad
L305 SIGNAL, ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A	1 signals per squad
L307 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 signals per squad
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 signals per squad
L314 Signal, Illumination Ground Green St	1 signals per squad

L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M 1 projectiles per squad

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range  
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live  
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range  
Facility Code 17750 Infantry Squad Battle Course

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Training for this event can be augmented through use of DVTE and VBS2.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Range must support all platoon weapons and attached weapons, to include dud-producing ordnance and overhead fires.  
TACTICAL CONSIDERATIONS: Actions on the objective may include repelling an enemy counterattack, pursuit of enemy by fire, etc., mech/tank considerations, dismount considerations, this event includes frontal and flanking attacks/ supported and unsupported, fire and movement and fire and maneuver. A leader issues the ADDRAC in support of this event.

---

INF-MAN-4002: Conduct an ambush (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, a mission, commander's intent, and the assault load.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct BAMCIS.
2. Cross LD.
3. Establish ORP.
4. Conduct leader's recon of ambush site.
5. Post security at ambush site.
6. Load security element into ambush site.
7. Load support element into ambush site.
8. Load assault element into ambush site.
9. Initiate ambush.
10. Search kill zone.
11. Remove assault element from ambush site to ORP.
12. Remove support element from ambush site to ORP.
13. Remove security element from ambush site to ORP.
14. Employ fire support plan to isolate objective and mask departure.
15. Return to friendly lines.
16. Conduct after action review.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0311-PAT-2003

INF-MAN-3301

0311-PAT-2001

0311-PAT-2002

RELATED EVENTS: INF-MAN-4303

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	10 per weapon
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	30 per weapon
BA35 Cartridge, 40MM Practice (Day/Night)	1 per weapon
J007 Mine, Antipersonnel M18A1 with Non-El	1 mines per squad

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17753 Automated Infantry Platoon Battle Course  
Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Range must support all company weapons.
2. Training for this event may be augmented through use of DVTE and VBS2.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. All targets must be destroyed by organic weapons to accomplish this task to standard.
2. Live ammunition is preferred if training facilities are available but this task can be accomplished to standard with blank ammunition.

---

INF-MAN-4003: Integrate Armor (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, an order, and a supporting or attached tank and/or mechanized unit.

STANDARD: To maximize maneuverability, speed, momentum, firepower, and shock effect to accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning.
2. Integrate fires.
3. Conduct tactical logistics.
4. Coordinate communications.
5. Coordinate signal plan.
6. Prepare for combat (pre-combat actions).
7. Conduct integrated rehearsals.
8. Execute command and control.
9. Designate targets based on capabilities and limitations.
10. Deconflict battle space geometry.
11. Mount mech/move with tanks.
12. Provide all around security.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Large)  
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Additional considerations for tanks/mech in assembly areas, concerns for armor routes, threat, planning for team tank, team mech, or tank/dismounted infantry integration, routes, obstacles, environments, fuel, vehicle recovery, maintenance, communication plan, load plans, bump plans, signal plans, fire commands, mech and tank caps/lms, movement along armor considerations, etc.
2. Planning should also include additional non-organic armor-infantry team fires.
3. Tanks can't carry personnel but they can carry ammo/equipment for dismounts.
4. Armor has significant logistical requirements.

---

INF-MAN-4004: Clear a Fortified Position (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, order, an objective/structure/trenchline, individual weapons, and while wearing a fighting load.

STANDARD: To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Integrate fires.
4. Conduct resupply.
5. Prepare for combat.
6. Execute command and control.
7. Move to assault position.
8. Conduct reconnaissance of entry.
9. Establish a support by fire(s), as necessary.
10. Isolate entry.
11. Gain foothold.
12. Seize entry.
13. Mark entry.

14. Pull combat power by echelon into objective.
15. Mark lead trace.
16. Conduct Tactical Site Exploitation.
17. Consolidate.
18. Conduct post combat actions.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

INF-ASLT-3004	INF-ASLT-3003	INF-ASLT-3001
0311-OFF-2007	0311-OFF-2006	0311-OFF-2005
INF-MAN-3001	0311-OFF-2003	0311-OFF-2002
0311-OFF-2001	0311-MOUT-2001	INF-MAN-3203
INF-MAN-3002	0311-OFF-2004	

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	20 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	600 rounds per weapon
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	600 rounds per weapon
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	120 rounds per Marine
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 cartridges per weapon
B508 Cartridge, 40mm Green Smoke Ground M	1 cartridges per weapon
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 cartridges per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	1 cartridges per weapon
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 cartridges per weapon
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	4 cartridges per weapon
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	1 grenades per Marine
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	1 fuses per Marine
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	1 grenades per Team
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per Team
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per Team

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

1. Live fire MOUT facility/Training area
2. MOUT facility/MOUT training area
3. MILES Gear

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Live ammunition is preferred if training facilities are available but this task can be accomplished to standard with blank ammunition. The cleared rooms are marked in accordance with the unit Standing Operating Procedure (SOP). Consider information operations (IO) on

occupants, as necessary. Fortified position includes, but is not limited to rooms, hallways, ladderwells, trenches, bunkers, etc.

---

INF-MAN-4101: Conduct a defense (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, attachments, an order, specified duration of the operation, and an area.

STANDARD: To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Integrate attachments.
4. Integrate fires.
5. Conduct tactical logistics.
6. Prepare for combat (pre-combat actions).
7. Occupy the defense.
8. Execute priorities of work.
9. Execute the scheme of maneuver and fire support.
10. Execute command and control.
11. Execute continuing actions.
12. Conduct post combat actions.

CHAINED EVENTS:

INF-ASLT-3006	INF-ASLT-3002	0311-MOUT-2001
INF-MAN-3102	INF-MAN-3101	INF-MGUN-3001
0311-DEF-2005	0311-DEF-2004	0311-DEF-2003
0311-DEF-2002	0311-DEF-2001	0311-DEF-2006

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
3. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17740 Squad Defense Range

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Training areas that support pyrotechnics.
2. Live fire and maneuver range.
3. Training for this event can be augmented through use of DVTE and VBS2.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: ADDITIONAL CONSIDERATIONS:

1. Planning should include: forms of defense: sector, perimeter, linear, non-linear, reverse slope, defensive recon considerations, etc.

2. Integration of fires should include: Long range fires, close supporting fires, and final protective fires.
3. Security plan: should be commenced as early as possible, even during the leader's recon if able. Security should be established NLT prior to commencing priorities of work.
4. Ammunition requirements, if required, can be sourced from INF-MAN-5004.
5. Priorities of work (SAFE) Security, Automatic weapons on avenues of approach, fields of fire, entrenching.

---

INF-MAN-4201: Conduct assembly area actions (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO                      SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, an order, remote likelihood of enemy contact, and in preparation for follow on operations.

STANDARD: To accomplish the mission, meet the commander's intent, and prepare for follow on operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish and improve all around security. (S)
2. Position automatic weapons on most likely avenues of enemy approach. (A)
3. Improve fields of fire, obstacles, fire support plan. (F)
4. Establish and improve positions/entrenchment. (E)
5. Conduct planning.
6. Conduct resupply.
7. Prepare for combat operations.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event includes overlapping event components with many type operation events. Such redundancy is necessary, but does not necessitate duplicate evaluation or execution. Additionally, an assembly area can be a ship, FOB, LZ, or some other area where contact with the enemy is relatively remote. BAMCIS is used as the primary tool for planning.

---

INF-MAN-4202: Conduct a passage of lines (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO                      SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, attachments, an order, and while serving as either the moving or stationary unit.

STANDARD: To accomplish the mission, meet the commander's intent, with minimal disruption to operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Integrate fires.
4. Prep for combat.
5. Execute command and control.
6. Conduct a linkup.
7. Set conditions for passage of lines.
8. Conduct battle handover with stationary unit.
9. Move through the passage route(s).
10. Conduct battle handover to moving unit.

CHAINED EVENTS: INF-MAN-3201

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
3. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Planning must be coordinated between stationary and moving units and must include control measures for link up, accountability, coordinated casevac plan, coordinated detainee plan, control measures for release point(s).

---

INF-MAN-4203: Breach an obstacle (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, attachments, an order, an obstacle that cannot be bypassed, and breaching materials.

STANDARD: To gain mobility through an obstacle and accomplish the mission with minimal delay.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Integrate fires.
4. Conduct resupply.
5. Prepare for combat (pre-combat actions).

6. Execute command and control.
7. Set conditions for breach.
8. Suppress/obscure the objective if necessary (SO).
9. Secure the breach site (establish near side security). (S)
10. Reduce the obstacle. (R)
11. Proof and mark lane.
12. Establish far side security.
13. Guide(s) move forces through the breach site.
14. Continue the assault/operation.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

INF-ASLT-3005	INF-ASLT-3004	INF-ASLT-3003
INF-MAN-3202	0311-OFF-2005	0311-OFF-2003
0311-OFF-2007		

**RELATED EVENTS:** INF-ASLT-3003

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
3. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad
4. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)
5. TM 9-1375-213-12 Demolition Materials

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course  
Facility Code 17750 Infantry Squad Battle Course  
Facility Code 17830 Light Demolition Range  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

**EQUIPMENT:** Mechanical breaching kit (grappling hook, sledge hammer, halligan tool, etc.).

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

1. Appropriate demolition range (if ammunition is used).
2. Live fire and maneuver range.
3. Training for this event can be augmented through use of IIT, DVTE, and VBS2.

---

**INF-MAN-4204:** Support by fire/overwatch (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, attachments, an order, and a moving or maneuvering unit/echelon scheme of maneuver; while motorized, mechanized, or dismounted; during daylight or limited visibility.

**STANDARD:** To support maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Task organize.
4. Integrate attachments as required.
5. Integrate fires.
6. Conduct resupply.
7. Prep for combat (pre-combat actions).
8. Execute command and control.
9. Execute movement.
10. Occupy firing/overwatch positions.
11. Conduct targeting.
12. Improve positions as necessary.
13. Deconflict battlespace geometry.
14. Execute signal plan.
15. Determine effects on target(s).
16. Adjust fires/overwatch as necessary.
17. Displace as necessary.
18. Consolidate.
19. Conduct post combat actions.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

INF-ASLT-3002	INF-ASLT-3001	0311-OFF-2006
INF-MGUN-3001	0311-OFF-2004	0311-OFF-2002
INF-MAN-3203	0311-OFF-2005	

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machineguns and Machinegun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	20 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	800 rounds per weapon
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	800 rounds per unit
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	120 rounds per Marine
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	800 rounds per Team
A143 Cartridge, 7.62mm Ball M80 Linked	800 rounds per Team
A151 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball/1 Tracer Li	800 rounds per Team
A358 Cartridge, 9mm TP-T M939 for AT-4 Tr	1 round per weapon
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 signals per weapon
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 signals per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	2 signals per platoon
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 rounds per weapon
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	4 rounds per weapon
C995 Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT	1 rocket per squad
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	3 grenades per squad
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	3 fuses per squad
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	1 grenades per squad
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per squad
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	1 grenades per squad
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	1 grenades per squad
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	1 grenades per squad

G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per squad
HA21 Rocket, 21mm Sub-Caliber, M72AS Trai	1 rocket per squad
HA29 Rckt 66mm HE, M72A7, LAW W/GRAZE	1 rocket per squad
FMPR Rocket, FOTS Multi-Purpose Round	1 per squad
FPTR Rocket, FOTS Practice Training Round	1 rocket per squad
L305 SIGNAL, ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A	1 signals per squad
L307 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 signals per squad
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 signals per squad
L314 Signal, Illumination Ground Green St	1 signals per squad
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M	1 projectiles per squad

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course  
Facility Code 17750 Infantry Squad Battle Course

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training for this event can be augmented through use of IIT, DVTE, and VBS2.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Range will need to support a platoon level attack. Range must support all company weapons and attached weapons, to include dud-producing ordnance and overhead fires.

---

**INF-MAN-4205:** Consolidate (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, an order, and in preparation for follow on operations.

**STANDARD:** To enable preparation for combat while maintaining security, reorganizing the unit, and improving the current position.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Establish and improve all around security. (S)
2. Execute command and control.
3. Displace or reposition elements as required.
4. Position automatic weapons on most likely avenues of enemy approach. (A)
5. Process ammunition, casualty, and equipment (ACE) reports.
6. Redistribute ammunition, personnel, supplies, and equipment.
7. Conduct CASEVAC/MEDEVAC as required.
8. Detain/process detainees as required.
9. Conduct information collections.
10. Improve fields of fire/sectors of fire, obstacles, etc. (F)
11. Establish/improve positions/entrenchment. (E)
12. Prepare for follow-on operations.

**CHAINED EVENTS:** INF-MAN-3204

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17750 Infantry Squad Battle Course  
Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: This event can be trained through use of the IIT.

---

INF-MAN-4206: Conduct a link up (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, an order, contact/linkup point(s), and while serving as either the moving or stationary unit.

STANDARD: To linkup with a friendly unit.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct Planning.
2. Integrate Fires.
3. Prepare for Combat Operations.
4. Execute Command and Control.
5. Set conditions for linkup.
6. Move to contact point.
7. Moving unit initiates far recognition signal.
8. Stationary responds with far recognition signal.
9. Stationary unit initiates near recognition signal.
10. Moving responds with near recognition signal.
11. Complete link up.

CHAINED EVENTS: INF-MAN-3205

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Planning must be coordinated between stationary and moving units, must include control measures for link up, accountability, signal plan, coordinated casevac plan. Link up can be physical or non-physical.

---

INF-MAN-4207: Detain personnel (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, an order, and apprehended personnel.

STANDARD: To ensure safe and expeditious handling of detainees in accordance with the laws of armed conflict, rules of engagement, and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Search detainees for weapons, ammunition, and any other items that may provide potential intelligence value. (S)
2. Record initial findings.
3. Tag detainees. (T)
4. Photograph scenes of intelligence value.
5. Inventory all items removed and collect them in a zip loc bag.
6. Report personnel detained. (R)
7. Evacuate to a detainee collection point. (E)
8. Segregate detainees based on perceived status of authority or position. (S)
9. Safeguard detainees. (S)
10. Complete documentation.

CHAINED EVENTS: INF-MAN-3206

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 4-11.8C Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
3. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17904 Prisoner Of War Training Area  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

EQUIPMENT: Detainee kits.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Role players
2. Enemy documents/Information/weapons
3. TSE Kit
4. IIT

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. The search should include all clothing on the individual, to include shoes. To ensure the safety and security of the capturing force, do not exempt anything from search.
2. Recording initial findings follows the need to photograph, sketch, witness statements and the details of the detainee and related equipment or documentation found, etc.
3. Tag detainees with a DD Form 2745 (Capture Tag) or a field-expedient capture tag that includes the following information: date and time of

capture, capturing unit, location of capture (grid coordinates), special circumstances of capture (how the person was captured, if the detainee resisted, if the detainee surrendered, and so forth), did the person have weapons on them at the time of capture, list all documents and other items on their person at the time of capture as well as a sketch of findings locations, etc.

4. Deliver all documents/pocket litter captured with the detainee(s) in order to assist in questioning.

5. Unit should incorporate cultural and gender considerations into the event.

---

INF-MAN-4208: Conduct casualty evacuation (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, an order, and casualties.

STANDARD: To treat and evacuate casualties in a timely manner with minimal interruption to the mission while maintaining accountability.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish security.
2. Provide care under fire if required.
3. Move casualties to safe area.
4. Provide tactical casualty care.
5. Conduct triage.
6. Coordinate evacuation transport.
7. Move casualties to transport.

CHAINED EVENTS:

INF-MAN-3207                      0300-MED-1001

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 4-11.1A MTP for Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries
2. MCWP 4-11.1 Health Service Support Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Initial reporting is part of the coordination for transport. Final reporting is part of maintaining accountability.

---

INF-MAN-4209: React to a meeting engagement (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: The unit is conducting a tactical movement. Elements have either observed or been engaged by enemy forces. The enemy can be moving or stationary.

CONDITION: Given a reinforced rifle squad and an assigned mission.

STANDARD: In accordance with the commander's intent while maintaining control of all elements and awareness of adjacent unit positions and actions.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. React per developed Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs), rehearsed immediate action drills, or in accordance with commander's intent.
2. Elements maintain awareness of adjacent unit locations.
3. Determine the enemy's location and disposition.
4. Forward an initial SITREP.
5. Conduct an assessment of the situation and issue a verbal fragmentary order that specifies an objective and provides control measures.
6. Set conditions to support follow on operations.
7. Consolidate, reorganize, and submit reports per Standard Operating Procedures.

RELATED EVENTS: INF-MAN-5208

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad
2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	5 per weapon
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	15 per weapon
BA35 Cartridge, 40MM Practice (Day/Night)	1 per weapon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range  
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live  
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range  
Facility Code 17671 Field Artillery Indirect Fire Range  
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range  
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Range must support all platoon weapons and attached weapons, to include dud-producing ordnance and overhead fires.

---

INF-MAN-4210: React to snipers in an urban environment (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: As a member of an infantry unit, operating in an urban environment, with T/O weapons and equipment, under conditions of daylight, darkness, inclement weather, or CBRN.

STANDARD: In accordance with unit SOPs and the listed component events.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leader maneuvers the unit to get behind available cover, firing positions.
2. Identify the position or direction the shot(s) came from.
3. Cut-off likely escape routes.
4. Contain, assault, or clear the target objective.
5. Cordon off the area to prevent reinforcement and local populace interference, if applicable.
6. Identify the firing point and search.

REFERENCES:

1. BUST Handbook
2. Unit Standard Operating Procedures (SOP)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Training for this event can be augmented through the use of IIT, DVTE, and VBS2.

---

INF-MAN-4211: Establish a Snap Vehicle Checkpoint (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, mission, commander's intent, and while wearing a fighting load.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver IAW commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Team members assume positions before the vehicle is stopped.
2. The TL and automatic rifleman/cover man will wave down and stop the vehicle.
3. For left hand drive vehicles the automatic rifleman should start on the TL's left side where he can maintain a clear line of fire to the vehicle.
4. Additional riflemen provide spherical security, cut-off, observation of approaches from front and back of vehicle, and maintain awareness of upper stories of surrounding buildings.
5. Search the vehicle.

RELATED EVENTS: INF-MAN-4212

REFERENCES:

1. BUST Handbook

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Training for this event can be augmented through use of DVTE and VBS2.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: The "snap" VCP is the simplest form of VCP and can be initiated by any unit leader. The "snap" VCP can be directed at a specific vehicle suspected of foul play or a unit leader can have several teams conduct simultaneous "snap" VCPs to disrupt enemy operations in an AO. Once the vehicle has been secured, the normal TTPs for vehicle and personnel search apply.

---

INF-MAN-4212: Conduct personnel/vehicle checkpoint operations (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, mission, commander's intent, and while wearing a fighting load.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver IAW commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Search individuals/vehicles according to unit SOP, higher headquarters order, and applicable Rules of Engagement (ROEs).
2. The security team maintains observation, clear fields of fire, and sets the appropriate distance from individuals/vehicles being searched IAW SOP.
3. When conducting a search, search teams maintain sufficient distance from waiting individuals/vehicles.
4. Rotate search element members and security element members periodically, to minimize complacency.
5. Maintain communications with higher headquarters.

RELATED EVENTS: INF-MAN-4211

REFERENCES:

1. BUST Handbook

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Trafficable roads/trails with adjacent dismounted maneuver/training area
2. Civilian vehicles
3. Civilian role players

4. Training for this event can be augmented through use of DVTE and VBS2.
- 

INF-MAN-4213: Conduct a cordon and search (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO                      SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, a mission, commander's intent, and an assault load.

STANDARD: To support the platoon scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct BAMCIS.
2. Move to the objective rally point (ORP).
3. Establish inner and outer cordons.
4. Interact with civilians to gain cooperation from the local residents and gather information about search objectives.
5. Search and/or interview all civilians/non-combatants for suspected enemy personnel.
6. Search designated area IAW mission.
7. Avoid unnecessary force or damage to civilian property.
8. Immediately report and attempt to exploit information gained from questioning civilians, detainees or from hidden caches.
9. Conduct retrograde.
10. Submit all required reports.

REFERENCES:

1. MCIP 3-33.01 Small Unit Leaders Guide to Counterinsurgency
2. MCRP 3-31.4B Multi-service Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Cordon and Search Operations
3. MCWP 3-33.5 Counterinsurgency Operations
4. BUST Handbook

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. MOUT facility / MOUT training area
  2. Opposing Forces
  3. Role Players
  4. SESAMS weapons kits to include the protective suite
  5. Training for this event can be augmented through use of IIT, DVTE, and VBS2.
- 

INF-MAN-4301: Conduct a combat patrol (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO                      SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, attachments, and an order.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent while seeking direct contact.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Integrate attachments.
4. Integrate fires.
5. Prepare for combat (pre-combat actions).
6. Execute command and control.
7. Depart friendly lines.
8. Move to objective rally point.
9. Execute actions on the objective area.
10. Conduct immediate actions as required.
11. Conduct information collection.
12. Consolidate as necessary.
13. Return to objective rally point.
14. Return to friendly lines.
15. Conduct post combat actions.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0300-TRNG-2001	0311-PAT-2001	0300-PAT-2006
0300-PAT-2004	0300-PAT-2001	

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad
2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	40 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	10 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	200 rounds per weapon
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 rounds per weapon
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	40 rounds per Marine
A358 Cartridge, 9mm TP-T M939 for AT-4 Tr	1 cartridges per squad
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 cartridges per weapon
B508 Cartridge, 40mm Green Smoke Ground M	1 cartridges per weapon
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 cartridges per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	1 cartridges per weapon
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 cartridges per weapon
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	10 cartridges per weapon
C995 Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT	1 cartridges per squad
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	1 grenades per Team
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	1 grenades per Team
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	1 grenades per Team
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per Team
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per Team
HA21 Rocket, 21mm Sub-Caliber, M72AS Trai	1 rocket per Team
HA29 Rckt 66mm HE, M72A7, LAW W/GRAZE	1 rocket per Team

L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M 1 Simulator per Team

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17752 Infantry Platoon Battle Course  
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live  
Facility Code 17630 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Subcaliber

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

1. Range must support all company weapons.
2. Training for this event can be augmented through use of DVTE and VBS2.

---

**INF-MAN-4302:** Conduct a reconnaissance patrol (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, attachments, and an order.

**STANDARD:** To gather or confirm information while seeking to avoid direct combat with the enemy.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Integrate fires.
4. Prepare for combat (pre-combat actions).
5. Execute command and control.
6. Conduct a passage of lines.
7. Move to the objective rally point.
8. Execute immediate action drills as required.
9. Recon the objective.
10. Return to the objective rally point.
11. Conduct information collection.
12. Re-enter friendly lines.
13. Conduct post-combat actions.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0300-TRNG-2001	0311-PAT-2003	0311-PAT-2002
0300-PAT-2006	INF-MAN-3301	0300-PAT-2005
0300-PAT-2004	0300-PAT-2002	0300-PAT-2003
0300-PAT-2001		

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad
2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	40 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	10 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	200 rounds per weapon

A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	200 rounds per weapon
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	40 rounds per Marine
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 cartridges per squad
B508 Cartridge, 40mm Green Smoke Ground M	1 cartridges per squad
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 cartridges per squad
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	1 cartridges per weapon
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 cartridges per weapon
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	10 cartridges per weapon
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	1 grenades per Marine
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	1 fuses per Marine
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	1 grenades per Team
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per Team
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per Team
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M	1 Simulator per Team

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range  
Facility Code 17750 Infantry Squad Battle Course  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17810 Live Hand Grenade Range  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training for this event can be augmented through use of DVTE and VBS2.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Recon specific planning considerations, means of movement, task org (sec, recon, etc), contingency plans, types of recon patrols are area, zone, and route.

---

**INF-MAN-4303:** Operate from a patrol base (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** This task is designed for a dismounted reinforced rifle squad, reinforced with weapons organic to a rifle company.

**CONDITION:** Given a mission, an assigned area to patrol, location of adjacent friendly units, estimates of enemy locations, most recent activities of the enemy, attachments or detachments, activities of local populace.

**STANDARD:** To operate a command post and conduct patrols from the patrol base.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Reconnoiter the patrol base.
2. A portion of the security team remains in the patrol base while the squad leader and the remainder returns to the main body.

3. The squad leader brings the rest of the unit forward.
4. The rear security element camouflages the trail from the security position to the patrol base.
5. Occupy the patrol base by deploying in a controlled manner and establishing a perimeter.
6. Use only one point of entry and exit when possible.
7. Establish temporary observation posts. As a minimum, establish an observation post to observe the route the unit used to enter the patrol base.
8. Conduct reconnaissance to the limits of the unit's direct fire weapons to identify any signs of enemy activity, suitable observation post locations, possible rally points, withdrawal routes, and dead space.
9. Designate withdrawal routes, rally points, alternate patrol base, and observation post positions. Create a signal plan to support your withdrawal plan and rehearse.
10. Establish or modify standard operating procedures for defensive work priorities.
11. Develop a fire plan sketch.
12. Establish communications with higher headquarters, OPs, and throughout the unit.
13. Permit only necessary movement within the patrol base.
14. Continuously enforce security, continuing actions, noise, light, camouflage discipline, and rest plan.
15. Emplace early warning devices on avenues of approach.
16. Conduct command post operations within the patrol base. Leaders in the patrol base continue to plan and prepare for the mission and units conduct patrols.
17. Establish an alternate patrol base to be used in case you are compromised or need to relocate after a period of time.
18. After departure, remove or conceal all signs of the unit's presence.

**RELATED EVENTS:** INF-MAN-3301

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad
2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training for this event can be augmented through use of DVTE and VBS2.

---

**INF-MGUN-4001:** Occupy a medium/light machinegun firing position (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a medium/light machinegun squad, mission, commander's intent, an area to occupy, and a supported unit scheme of maneuver, while wearing the assault load.

**STANDARD:** To support the unit's scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Establish security.
2. Reconnoiter tentative position.
3. Move by stealth or by force to the selected position.
4. Integrate sectors of fire with adjacent machinegun squad.
5. Incorporate local security to support the machinegun squad.
6. Establish primary/alternate/supplementary positions as needed.
7. Establish communications.
8. Improve positions as necessary.
9. Perform continuing actions as necessary.
10. Conduct follow on missions as required.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0331-EMPL-2013	0331-EMPL-2012	0331-EMPL-2011
0331-EMPL-2010	INF-MGUN-3001	0331-EMPL-2003
0331-EMPL-2002	0331-EMPL-2001	INF-MAN-3203
0331-EMPL-2005		

**RELATED EVENTS:** INF-MAN-4204

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.68 Light and Medium machineguns
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machineguns and Machinegun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17582 Automated Multipurpose Machine Gun Range (MPMG)  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This covers offense or defense operations while mounted or dismounted.
2. This event covers the full range of environmental conditions includes daylight, limited visibility, urban, rural, littoral, arctic, jungle, mountain, etc.

---

**INF-MGUN-4002:** Occupy a heavy machinegun squad firing position (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a heavy machinegun squad, mission, commander's intent, an area to occupy, and a supported unit scheme of maneuver, while operating in the full range of environmental conditions.

**STANDARD:** To support the unit's scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Establish security.
2. Reconnoiter tentative position.

3. Move by stealth or by force to the selected position.
4. Integrate sectors of fire with adjacent machinegun squad.
5. Incorporate local security to support the machinegun squad.
6. Establish primary/alternate/supplementary positions.
7. Establish communications.
8. Improve positions as necessary.
9. Perform continuing actions as necessary.
10. Conduct follow on missions as required.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0331-EMPL-2010	0331-EMPL-2005	0331-EMPL-2003
0331-EMPL-2002	INF-MGUN-3001	0331-EMPL-2013
0331-EMPL-2012	0331-EMPL-2011	0331-EMPL-2001

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.27 MK19
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine gun, Caliber .50, HB M2
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machineguns and Machinegun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17582 Automated Multipurpose Machine Gun Range (MPMG)  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This covers offense or defense operations while mounted or dismounted.
  2. The event covers the full range of environmental conditions includes daylight, limited visibility, urban, rural, littoral, arctic, jungle, mountain, etc.
- 

**INF-MGUN-4003:** Employ a medium/light machinegun squad in support of offensive operations (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a medium/light machinegun squad, mission, commander's intent, a supported unit scheme of maneuver, while operating in the full range of environmental conditions.

**STANDARD:** To meet commander's intent and to support the units scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Prepare for combat operations.
4. Execute movement.
5. Occupy positions.
6. Improve positions as necessary.
7. Issue/receive fire commands.

8. Execute signal plan.
9. Determine effects on target(s).
10. Shift/cease fires as necessary.
11. Displace unit as directed.
12. Consolidate.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0331-EMPL-2002	0331-EMPL-2001	0331-EMPL-2013
0331-EMPL-2011	INF-MGUN-3001	0331-EMPL-2008
0331-EMPL-2005	0331-EMPL-2003	0331-EMPL-2010

**RELATED EVENTS:**

INF-MGUN-4001                      INF-FSPT-4001

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.68 Light and Medium machineguns
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machineguns and Machinegun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	30 rounds per Marine
A062 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	800 rounds per weapon
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	800 rounds per weapon
A143 Cartridge, 7.62mm Ball M80 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A151 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball/1 Tracer Li	800 rounds per weapon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training for this event can be augmented through the use of IIT, DVTE, VBS2, and ISMT.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This covers offense operations while mounted and dismounted. Actions on the objective may include execution of engagement criteria and application of target precedence.
2. The event covers the full range of environmental conditions includes daylight, limited visibility, urban, rural, littoral, arctic, jungle, mountain, etc.

---

**INF-MGUN-4004:** Employ a medium/light machinegun squad in support of defensive operations (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 3

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a medium/light machinegun squad, mission, commander's intent, an area to defend, and a supported unit scheme of maneuver, while

operating in the full range of environmental conditions.

**STANDARD:** To meet commander's intent and to support the unit's scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Prepare for combat operations.
4. Execute movement.
5. Recon tentative firing positions.
6. Occupy defensive positions.
7. Prepare defensive positions.
8. Issue/receive fire commands.
9. Execute signal plan.
10. Engage targets.
11. Control fires as directed.
12. Determine effects of fires and shift as necessary.
13. Utilize alternate or supplementary positions as necessary.
14. Prepare for follow on missions.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0331-EMPL-2013	0331-EMPL-2012	0331-EMPL-2010
0331-EMPL-2008	INF-MGUN-3001	0331-EMPL-2003
0331-EMPL-2002	0331-EMPL-2001	0331-EMPL-2005

**RELATED EVENTS:**

INF-MGUN-4001	INF-FSPT-4001
---------------	---------------

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-22.68 Light and Medium machineguns
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machineguns and Machinegun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	30 rounds per Marine
A062 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	800 rounds per unit
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	800 rounds per weapon
A143 Cartridge, 7.62mm Ball M80 Linked	800 rounds per weapon
A151 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball/1 Tracer Li	800 rounds per weapon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

1. Maneuver/Training area.
2. Training of this event can be augmented through use of DVTE, VBS2, and ISMT.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Actions in the defense may include execution of engagement criteria and

application of target precedence.

2. The event covers the full range of environmental conditions includes daylight, limited visibility, urban, rural, littoral, arctic, jungle, mountain, etc.

---

INF-MGUN-4005: Employ a heavy machinegun squad in support of offensive operations (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an operations order, a heavy machinegun squad, mounted or dismounted, sectors of fire, targets, while wearing the assault load and taking into considerations environmental/tactical conditions.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct mission analysis.
2. Task organize.
3. Emplace machinegun squad.
4. Engage targets according to the scheme of maneuver.
5. Control fires as directed.
6. Displace according to the scheme of maneuver.
7. Prepare for follow on missions.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0331-EMPL-2013	0331-EMPL-2011	0331-EMPL-2010
0331-EMPL-2008	INF-MGUN-3001	0331-EMPL-2003
0331-EMPL-2002	0331-EMPL-2001	0331-EMPL-2005

RELATED EVENTS:

INF-MGUN-4002                      INF-FSPT-4001

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-22.27 MK19
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine gun, Caliber .50, HB M2
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machineguns and Machinegun Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	600 rounds per weapon
A598 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Blank M1A1 Li	600 rounds per unit
BA21 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	144 rounds per weapon
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	144 rounds per weapon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Maneuver/training area

2. Training for this event can be augmented through use of DVTE, VBS2, and ISMT.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This task may be accomplished to standard utilizing simulation.
  2. Ammo accounts for 5 min of suppression.
  3. DODIC B542 may be replaced by DODIC BA21.
- 

INF-MGUN-4006: Employ a heavy machinegun squad in support of defensive operations (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an operations order, a heavy machinegun squad, mounted or dismounted, sectors of fire, FPF, targets, while wearing fighting loads and taking into considerations environmental/tactical conditions.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct mission analysis.
2. Task organize.
3. Emplace machinegun squad.
4. Engage targets according to the scheme of maneuver.
5. Control fires as directed.
6. Displace to alternate or supplementary positions according to the scheme of maneuver.
7. Prepare for follow on missions.

RELATED EVENTS: INF-MGUN-4002

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-22.27 MK19
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine gun, Caliber .50, HB M2
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machineguns and Machinegun Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	30 rounds per Marine
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Link	600 rounds per weapon
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	200 rounds per weapon
A598 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Blank M1A1 Li	600 rounds per weapon
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	144 rounds per weapon
BA21 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	144 rounds per weapon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Maneuver/training area
2. Training for this event can be augmented through use of DVTE, VBS2, and ISMT.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This task may be accomplished to standard utilizing simulation.
2. Ammo supports firing the FPF.
3. DODIC B542 may be replaced by DODIC BA21.

---

INF-MORT-4001: Emplace a mortar squad (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an SL-3 complete mortar, assigned individual weapons, entrenching tools, sandbags, a designated position, and a direction of fire, as a mortar squad, while wearing prescribed fighting load.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Set security.
2. Construct mortar.
3. Establish communication.
4. Mount the mortar.
5. Lay the mortar.
6. Construct supplementary fighting position.
7. Construct alternate fighting position if applicable.
8. Perform continuing actions.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0341-FDC-2019	0341-60mm-1002	0341-FDC-2018
0341-FDC-2007	0341-FDC-2002	0341-FDC-2006
0341-FO-2001	0341-WPNS-1009	0341-WPNS-1008
0341-WPNS-1007	0341-WPNS-1004	0341-WPNS-2008
0341-WPNS-2007	0341-WPNS-2006	0341-WPNS-2005
0341-WPNS-2004	0341-WPNS-2003	0341-WPNS-2002
0341-81mm-1004	0341-81mm-1003	0341-81mm-1002
0341-81mm-1001	0341-60mm-1004	0341-60mm-1003
0341-FDC-2004		

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-15.2A Mortars

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Mortar team members will conduct the performance steps, working interchangeably.
2. Entrenching will encompass both gun position and ammo pit.

---

INF-MORT-4002: Employ a 60mm mortar squad in support of company operations (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an SL-3 complete 60mm mortar, assigned individual weapons, entrenching tools, sandbags, a designated position, and a direction of fire, as a mortar squad, while wearing prescribed fighting load.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Move in accordance with the scheme of maneuver.
2. Emplace mortar squad.
3. Engage targets according to the scheme of maneuver.
4. Control fires as directed.
5. Displace according to the scheme of maneuver.
6. Prepare for follow on missions.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0341-FDC-2018	0341-60mm-1002	0341-WPNS-1007
0341-WPNS-1006	0341-WPNS-1005	0341-WPNS-1004
0341-WPNS-1003	0341-WPNS-2003	0341-WPNS-2002
0341-WPNS-2001	0341-WPNS-1002	0341-WPNS-1001
0341-WPNS-2008	0341-WPNS-2007	0341-WPNS-2006
0341-WPNS-2005	0341-WPNS-2004	0341-60mm-1001
0341-60mm-1008	0341-60mm-1007	0341-60mm-1006
0341-60mm-1004	0341-60mm-1003	0341-WPNS-1009

RELATED EVENTS: INF-MORT-4001

REFERENCES:

1. FM 7-90 Tactical Employment of Mortars
2. MCRP 3-15.2A Mortars
3. MCRP 3-15.2B Mortar Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
BA16 Cartridge, 60mm HE M720A1 w/Multi-Op	16 rounds per section
B643 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M888	16 rounds per weapon
B647 Cartridge, 60mm Illuminating M721	12 rounds per weapon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Maneuver/Training area
2. Training for this event can be augmented through use of CACCTUS.

---

INF-MORT-4003: Employ an 81mm mortar squad in support of battalion operations (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an SL-3 complete 81mm mortar, assigned individual weapons, entrenching tools, sandbags, a designated position, and a direction of fire, as a mortar squad, while wearing prescribed fighting load.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Emplace mortar squad.
2. Engage targets according to the scheme of maneuver.
3. Control fires as directed.
4. Displace according to the scheme of maneuver.
5. Prepare for follow on missions.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0341-FDC-2020	0341-81mm-1002	0341-FDC-2017
0341-FDC-2016	0341-FDC-2015	0341-FDC-2014
0341-FDC-2013	0341-FDC-2012	0341-FDC-2011
0341-FDC-2010	0341-FDC-2009	0341-FDC-2008
0341-FDC-2007	0341-FDC-2001	0341-FO-2011
0341-FO-2008	0341-FO-2007	0341-FO-2004
0341-FO-2003	0341-FO-2002	0341-WPNS-1009
0341-WPNS-1008	0341-WPNS-1006	0341-WPNS-1005
0341-WPNS-1004	0341-WPNS-1003	0341-WPNS-1002
0341-WPNS-1001	0341-81mm-1005	0341-81mm-1004
0341-81mm-1003	0341-81mm-1001	0341-FDC-2018

RELATED EVENTS: INF-MORT-4001

REFERENCES:

1. FM 7-90 Tactical Employment of Mortars
2. MCRP 3-15.2A Mortars
3. MCRP 3-15.2B Mortar Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
C869 Cartridge, 81mm HE M889/M889A1 with	16 rounds per weapon
C870 Cartridge, 81mm Smoke Red Phosphorus	12 rounds per weapon
C871 Cartridge, 81mm Illuminating M853A1	12 rounds per weapon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Maneuver/Training area
2. CACCTUS

---

INF-MORT-4004: Engage targets as a mortar squad (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an SL-3 complete mortar, assigned individual weapons, entrenching tools, sandbags, a designated position, firing data, while wearing prescribed fighting load.

STANDARD: To achieve effects on targets.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Respond to fire commands.
2. Engage targets with FDC.
3. Engage targets without FDC.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0341-FDC-2020	0341-60mm-1001	0341-FDC-2018
0341-FDC-2017	0341-FDC-2016	0341-FDC-2015
0341-FDC-2014	0341-FDC-2013	0341-FDC-2012
0341-FDC-2011	0341-FDC-2010	0341-FDC-2009
0341-FDC-2008	0341-FDC-2007	0341-FDC-2006
0341-FDC-2005	0341-FDC-2004	0341-FDC-2003
0341-FDC-2002	0341-FDC-2001	0341-FO-2010
0341-FO-2009	0341-FO-2008	0341-FO-2006
0341-FO-2004	0341-FO-2003	0341-FO-2002
0341-FO-2001	0341-FO-2011	0341-FO-2007
0341-FO-2005	0341-WPNS-2001	0341-WPNS-1008
0341-WPNS-1007	0341-WPNS-1006	0341-WPNS-1003
0341-WPNS-1002	0341-WPNS-1001	0341-WPNS-2009
0341-WPNS-2008	0341-WPNS-2007	0341-WPNS-2006
0341-WPNS-2005	0341-WPNS-2004	0341-WPNS-2003
0341-WPNS-2002	0341-81mm-1005	0341-81mm-1004
0341-81mm-1003	0341-81mm-1002	0341-81mm-1001
0341-60mm-1008	0341-60mm-1007	0341-60mm-1006
0341-60mm-1004	0341-60mm-1003	0341-60mm-1002
0341-FDC-2019		

RELATED EVENTS:

INF-MORT-4003                      INF-MORT-4002                      INF-MORT-4001

REFERENCES:

1. FM 7-90 Tactical Employment of Mortars
2. MCRP 3-15.2A Mortars
3. MCRP 3-15.2B Mortar Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
BA16 Cartridge, 60mm HE M720A1 w/Multi-Op	16 rounds per section
B643 Cartridge, 60mm High Explosive M888	16 rounds per weapon
B647 Cartridge, 60mm Illuminating M721	12 rounds per weapon
C869 Cartridge, 81mm HE M889/M889A1 with	16 rounds per weapon
C870 Cartridge, 81mm Smoke Red Phosphorus	12 rounds per weapon
C871 Cartridge, 81mm Illuminating M853A1	12 rounds per weapon

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** CACCTUS.

---

**7004. FIRE TEAM COLLECTIVE EVENTS**

**INF-0317-3001:** Conduct sniper team operations (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given an operations order, table of equipment, and an area of operations.

**STANDARD:** To provide surveillance, fires, reports, and precision engagements as required on the objective without being compromised.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Execute departure of friendly lines.
2. Establish security.
3. Utilize patrolling techniques.
4. Continuously camouflage.
5. Navigate to the objective area using patrolling techniques.
6. Occupy position.
7. Observe and report.
8. Execute precision fires as required.
9. Observe/Adjust supporting arms as required.
10. Withdraw from position.
11. Execute re-entry of friendly lines/adjacent unit linkup.
12. Conduct debrief.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0317-COMM-2002	0317-FSPT-2001	0317-COMM-1003
0317-COMM-1002	0317-COMM-1001	0317-COMM-2001
0317-OPS-2005	0317-OPS-2004	0317-OPS-2003
0317-OPS-2002	0317-OPS-2001	0317-TACT-2001
0317-PAT-1005	0317-PAT-1004	0317-PAT-1003
0317-PAT-1002	0317-PAT-1001	0317-PAT-2002
0317-PAT-2001	0317-SURV-1003	0317-SURV-1002
0317-SURV-1001	0317-MARK-1003	0317-MARK-1002

0317-MARK-1001

0317-COMM-1004

RELATED EVENTS: INF-0317-3003

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-05.222 U.S. Army Special Forces Sniper Training and Employment
2. FM 5-20 Camouflage
3. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
4. MCWP 3-15.3 Scout Sniping

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A112 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82	2
A606 Cartridge, Caliber .50 API MK211 Mod	2 rounds per Team
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	2

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17560 Sniper Field-Fire Range

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Training areas used for blank firing when observers are used on objective.
2. Sniper unknown distance live fire range (1,000 meters, 7.62 LR batwing SDZ and steel targets), used for live fire after personnel have been cleared from objective.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Conducted in 6 to 8 man teams.
2. This event can be trained to standard without ammunition.

---

INF-0317-3002: Engage targets with coordinated shooting on command (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: Given a mission, a sniper team with mission essential equipment, and a controller.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and achieve mission accomplishment.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Handle the weapon safely.
2. Assume a firing position.
3. Estimate ballistics and weather to achieve hits on target and apply to scope turrets.
4. Engage targets on correct command via radio.
5. Assess the situation.
6. Make entries into data book/gun record book.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0317-M40-1002	0317-M40-1001	0317-SASR-1002
0317-MARK-2001	0317-MARK-1003	0317-MARK-1002
0317-MARK-1001	0317-SASR-1001	

RELATED EVENTS: INF-0317-3001

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-05.222 U.S. Army Special Forces Sniper Training and Employment
2. MCWP 3-15.3 Scout Sniping
3. TM 05539D-10/1 M40A3 Sniper Rifle
4. TM 09629A-23&P/2A SASR, 50 CALIBER M82A1A

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A606 Cartridge, Caliber .50 API MK211 Mod	10
AA11 Cartridge, 7.62mm Long Range M118 LR	20

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17560 Sniper Field-Fire Range

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Live fire range
2. Tactical Radio

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Sniper controller or designated person gives commands to fire. Standard command sequence is "Stand by, I have control, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1" (snipers fire on 2).

---

INF-0317-3003: Execute sniper team immediate action drills (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: Given a mission and a sniper team with mission essential equipment.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and achieve mission accomplishment.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. React to chance contact.
2. React to ambushes.
3. React to indirect fires.
4. React to enemy air.
5. React to various danger areas/obstacles/minefields.
6. React to enemy sniper fire.
7. React to contact on departure/re-entry or friendly lines.
8. React to contact during link up.
9. React to contact in/around FFP/hide site.
10. React to an IED.

11. Move as a unit.
12. Move by bounds from cover to cover.
13. Submit reports as required.
14. Request extract/reaction force/CASEVAC as required.

RELATED EVENTS: INF-0317-3001

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-05.222 U.S. Army Special Forces Sniper Training and Employment
2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
3. MCWP 3-15.3 Scout Sniping
4. SH 21-76 Ranger Handbook

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	30 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	100 rounds per weapon
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	30 rounds per Marine
BA35 Cartridge, 40MM Practice (Day/Night)	4 per weapon
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	2 grenades per Team
J007 Mine, Antipersonnel M18A1 with Non-E1	1 mines per Team

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)  
Facility Code 17560 Sniper Field-Fire Range  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Live fire and maneuver range at least 50 meters long for M16 series with various firing points and single and double E silhouette targets at distances of 75 to 400 meters.
2. Live fire MOUT facility/Training area.

---

INF-ASLT-3001: Provide offensive fires (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an operations order, an assault team, targets, while wearing the assault load.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Execute movement in accordance with SOM.
2. Identify cold position.
3. Identify hot positions.
4. Engage targets according to the scheme of maneuver.
5. Control fires as directed.
6. Displace according to the scheme of maneuver.
7. Prepare for follow on missions.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0351-SMAW-2003	0351-SMAW-2001	0351-SMAW-1010
0351-SMAW-1008	0351-SMAW-1003	0351-SMAW-1004
0351-SMAW-1001	0351-SMAW-1007	0351-SMAW-1006
0351-SMAW-1005	0351-SMAW-1002	

**RELATED EVENTS:**

INF-ASLT-4001	0351-SMAW-2003	0351-SMAW-1008
0351-SMAW-1002	0351-SMAW-1003	0351-SMAW-1006
0351-SMAW-1004		

**REFERENCES:**

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
3. TM 08673A-10/1 Launcher, Assault Rocket 83MM (SMAW) MK 153 MOD 0
4. TM 08673A-25&P/2A Launcher, Assault Rocket 83MM (SMAW)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17640 Antiarmor Tracking And Live-Fire Range

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

1. Maneuver/Training area
2. ISMT

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This task may be accomplished to standard utilizing simulation.

---

**INF-ASLT-3002:** Provide defensive fires (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given an operations order, an assault team, targets, while wearing an assault load.

**STANDARD:** To support the scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct BAMCIS.
2. Construct positions(s) IAW SOM.
3. Prioritize targets IAW the SOM.
4. Engage and control rocket fires IAW the SOM.
5. Reinforce defensive posture with service rifle as tasked.
6. Execute continuing actions.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0351-SMAW-2003	0351-SMAW-2001	0351-SMAW-1009
0351-SMAW-1008	0351-SMAW-1007	0351-SMAW-1010
0351-SMAW-1005	0351-SMAW-1004	0351-SMAW-1003

0351-SMAW-1002

0351-SMAW-1001

0351-SMAW-1006

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-15.5 Anti-armor Operations
2. TM 08673A-10/1B Launcher, Assault Rocket 83mm (SMAW) MK153 MOD 0
3. TM 08673A-25&P/2A Launcher, Assault Rocket 83MM (SMAW)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17830 Light Demolition Range

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This covers defense, mounted, and dismounted patrolling operations.
2. Tactical logistics are implied in event component 1 and 6.

---

INF-ASLT-3003: Conduct an explosive breach (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an operations order and commander's intent, breaching team, while wearing the assault load.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct BAMCIS.
2. Conduct breacher's brief.
3. Execute movement IAW the SOM.
4. Ensure conditions set for breach. (SOS)
5. Conduct actions at the breach point. (R)
6. Support assault through the objective. (A)
7. Execute continuing actions.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0351-APOB-2012	0351-SMAW-1001	0351-APOB-2010
0351-APOB-2009	0351-APOB-2008	0351-APOB-2007
0351-APOB-2006	0351-APOB-2005	0351-APOB-2004
0351-APOB-2003	0351-APOB-2001	0351-DEMO-2012
0351-DEMO-1002	0351-DEMO-1001	0351-DEMO-1008
0351-DEMO-1007	0351-DEMO-1006	0351-DEMO-1005
0351-DEMO-1004	0351-DEMO-1003	0351-SMAW-1010
0351-SMAW-1008	0351-SMAW-1007	0351-SMAW-1006
0351-SMAW-1005	0351-SMAW-1004	0351-SMAW-1003
0351-SMAW-1002	0351-APOB-2011	

RELATED EVENTS:

INF-ASLT-4001	0351-APOB-2008	0351-APOB-2007
0351-APOB-2006	0351-APOB-2005	0351-APOB-2004
INF-MAN-4203	0351-DEMO-2012	0351-DEMO-1005

0351-DEMO-1004                      0351-DEMO-1003                      0351-DEMO-1002  
0351-DEMO-1001                      0351-APOB-2003

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-21.91 Tactical Employment of Anti-armor Platoons, Companies and Battalions
2. FM 3-34.214 Explosives and Demolitions
3. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
4. FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data - Field Expedient Charges
5. MCWP 3-15.5 Anti-armor Operations
6. TM 013750-13&P Operators Manual MK-7 MOD. 1 Anti-Personnel Obstacle Breaching System (APOBS)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17830 Light Demolition Range

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. This event requires close coordination with the supported unit for setting the conditions at the breach site and assaulting through it.
2. This event applies to explosive breaches as well as the use of mechanical tools as a backup.

---

**INF-ASLT-3004:** Conduct a mechanical breach (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO                      **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given an operations order and commander's intent, breaching team, while wearing the assault load.

**STANDARD:** To support the scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct BAMCIS.
2. Conduct breacher's brief.
3. Execute movement IAW the SOM.
4. Ensure conditions set for breach. (SOS)
5. Conduct actions at the breach point. (R)
6. Support assault through the objective. (A)
7. Execute continuing actions.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0351-DEMO-1009                      0311-OFF-2007

**RELATED EVENTS:**

INF-ASLT-4001                      INF-MAN-4203                      0351-APOB-2007  
0351-APOB-2006                      0351-APOB-2005                      0351-APOB-2004  
0351-APOB-2003                      0351-DEMO-2012                      0351-DEMO-1005

0351-DEMO-1004                      0351-DEMO-1003                      0351-DEMO-1002  
0351-DEMO-1001                      INF-MAN-3202                      0351-APOB-2008

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-21.91 Tactical Employment of Anti-armor Platoons, Companies and Battalions
2. FM 3-34.214 Explosives and Demolitions
3. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
4. FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data - Field Expedient Charges
5. MCWP 3-15.5 Anti-armor Operations
6. TM 013750-13&P Operators Manual MK-7 MOD. 1 Anti-Personnel Obstacle Breaching System (APOBS)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17830 Light Demolition Range

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: This event can be trained through use of the IIT.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This event requires close coordination with the supported unit for setting the conditions at the breach site and assaulting through it.
2. This event applies to explosive breaches as well as the use of mechanical tools as a backup.

---

INF-ASLT-3005: Reduce an obstacle (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given operations order, an assault team, targets, while wearing the assault load.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct BAMCIS.
2. Assist in development of scheme of maneuver.
3. Receive brief.
4. Recon obstacle site.
5. Secure obstacle site.
6. Reduce obstacle.
7. Report obstacle reduction effects.
8. Conduct continuing actions.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0351-APOB-2012                      0351-APOB-2011                      0351-APOB-2010  
0351-APOB-2001                      0351-APOB-2008                      0351-APOB-2005

0351-APOB-2004

0351-APOB-2009

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-21.91 Tactical Employment of Anti-armor Platoons, Companies and Battalions
2. FM 3-34.214 Explosives and Demolitions
3. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
4. MCWP 3-15.5 Anti-armor Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17830 Light Demolition Range  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Blasting machine
2. Continuity tester
3. Firing wire
4. M2 cap crimpers
5. Riggers/duct tape
6. Tape measure

---

INF-ASLT-3006: Emplace obstacle(s) (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given operations order, an assault team, targets, while wearing the assault load.

STANDARD: To support the scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct BAMCIS
2. Assist in development of scheme of maneuver.
3. Receive brief.
4. Recon obstacle site.
5. Select obstacle site.
6. Secure obstacle site.
7. Establish obstacle(s).
8. Report.
9. Conduct continuing actions.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-34.214 Explosives and Demolitions
2. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
3. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17830 Light Demolition Range  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Blasting machine
2. Continuity tester
3. Firing wire
4. M2 cap crimpers
5. Riggers/duct tape
6. Tape measure

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is conducted while in support of a squad.

---

INF-MAN-3001: Conduct fire and movement (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, an order, and while or while not serving as the base unit as part of a larger unit or independently.

STANDARD: To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Assess the situation.
2. Execute implicit/explicit communication.
3. Execute ADDRAC.
4. Deconflict battlespace geometry.
5. Suppress the enemy (S).
6. Assess effects of fires (A).
7. Adjust fires as necessary.
8. Assess effective suppression.
9. Move to close with enemy (M).
10. Execute actions on the objective (K).
11. Consolidate.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

0311-TRNG-2002	0300-M16-1001	0300-OPTS-1001
0300-MED-1001	0300-PAT-1009	0300-PAT-1008
0300-PAT-1005	0300-PAT-1004	0300-MOUT-1002
0300-MOUT-1001	0300-M203-1005	0300-M203-1004
0300-M203-1003	0300-M203-1002	0300-M203-1001
0300-M16-1017	0300-M16-1016	0300-M16-1015
0300-M16-1014	0300-M16-1013	0300-M16-1012
0300-M16-1011	0300-M16-1010	0300-M16-1009
0300-M16-1008	0300-M16-1007	0300-M16-1006
0300-M16-1005	0300-M16-1004	0300-M16-1003
0300-M16-1002	0311-TRNG-2001	

CHAINED EVENTS:

0300-COMM-1005	0300-COMM-1004	0300-COMM-1002
0300-COMM-1001	0300-COMM-1003	0300-PAT-1009
0300-M16-1001	0300-M203-1005	0300-M203-1003
0300-M203-1002	0300-M16-1004	0300-M16-1003

0311-OFF-2001

REFERENCES:

1. FM 21-75 Combat Skills of the Soldier
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
3. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	40 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	10 rounds per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	50 rounds per Marine
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 cartridges per Team
B508 Cartridge, 40mm Green Smoke Ground M	1 cartridges per Team
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 cartridges per Team
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	1 cartridges per Team
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 cartridges per Team
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	10 cartridges per Team
C995 Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT	1 cartridges per Team
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	1 grenades per Team
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	1 fuses per Team
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	1 grenades per Team
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per Team
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per Team
HA21 Rocket, 21mm Sub-Caliber, M72AS Trai	1 rocket per Team
HA29 Rckt 66mm HE, M72A7, LAW W/GRAZE	1 rocket per Team
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M	1 projectiles per Team

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range  
Facility Code 17750 Infantry Squad Battle Course

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: This event can be trained through use of the IIT.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Considerations, means of movement include unit, buddy, and individual. The event may also be used for cover and movement when there is no immediate enemy threat. A leader issues the ADDRAC in support of this event.

---

INF-MAN-3002: Clear a room (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, order, an objective/structure/trenchline, individual weapons, and while wearing the assault load.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission and meet the commander's intent.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Conduct targeting.
3. Conduct weaponeering.
4. Deconflict battlespace geometry.
5. Execute engagement criteria.
6. Execute target precedence.
7. Determine effects of fires.
8. Set conditions for entry.
9. Execute command and control.
10. Conduct reconnaissance of entry.
11. Isolate entry.
12. Gain entry.
13. Secure assigned sectors.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

0311-TRNG-2002	0300-M16-1001	0300-MED-1001
0300-PAT-1012	0300-PAT-1011	0300-MOUT-1002
0300-MOUT-1001	0300-M203-1005	0300-M203-1004
0300-M203-1003	0300-M203-1002	0300-M203-1001
0300-DEMO-1002	0300-DEMO-1001	0300-M16-1007
0300-M16-1006	0300-M16-1005	0300-M16-1004
0300-M16-1003	0300-M16-1002	0311-TRNG-2001

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0300-MED-1001	INF-MAN-3203	INF-ASLT-3003
0311-OFF-2005	0311-OFF-2004	0311-OFF-2003
0311-OFF-2001	0300-MOUT-1002	0300-MOUT-1001
0311-MOUT-2001	0300-M203-1005	0300-M203-1003
0300-M203-1002	0300-M16-1004	0300-M16-1003
0300-M16-1001	INF-ASLT-3004	

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 21-75 Combat Skills of the Soldier
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
3. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	20 rounds per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	120 rounds per Marine
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	1 grenades per Marine
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	1 fuses per Marine
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	1 grenades per Marine
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per Team
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	1 grenades per Marine
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per Team

L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M 1 Simulator per Team

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Live fire MOUT facility/Training area
2. MOUT facility/MOUT training area
3. MILES Gear
4. IIT

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Live ammunition is preferred if training facilities are available but this task can be accomplished to standard with blank ammunition. The cleared rooms are marked in accordance with the unit Standing Operating Procedure (SOP). Consider information operations (IO) on occupants, as necessary. There are similar techniques for clearing a room, cave, storage container, vehicle, small enclosed space, etc. but they are all applicable to this event.

---

INF-MAN-3101: Conduct a defense (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a fire team, a mission, commander's intent, a fighting load, and while functioning as part of a larger unit.

STANDARD: To support the squad scheme of maneuver and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Prepare defensive positions.
2. Defend in sector.
3. Emplace obstacles.
4. Establish local security.
5. Occupy a listening/observation post.
6. Comply with tactical control measures.
7. Comply with engagement/disengagement criteria.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

0311-TRNG-2002	0311-DEF-2001	0300-MED-1001
0300-M203-1004	0300-M203-1003	0300-M203-1002
0300-M203-1001	0311-M32-2003	0300-DEMO-1001
0300-M16-1017	0300-M16-1016	0300-M16-1015
0300-M16-1014	0300-M16-1013	0300-M16-1012
0300-M16-1011	0300-M16-1010	0300-M16-1009
0300-M16-1008	0300-M16-1007	0300-M16-1006
0300-M16-1005	0300-M16-1004	0300-M16-1003
0300-M16-1002	0300-M16-1001	0300-CMBH-1002
0300-CMBH-1001	0311-TRNG-2001	

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0300-COMM-1005	0311-DEF-2001	0300-COMM-1003
0300-COMM-1002	0300-COMM-1001	0300-OPTS-1001
0300-MED-1001	INF-ASLT-3006	INF-ASLT-3002
0300-OFF-1001	0311-MOUT-2001	0300-M203-1005
0300-M203-1003	0300-M203-1002	0300-M203-1001
0300-DEMO-1003	0300-M16-1003	0300-M16-1001
INF-MAN-3102	0311-DEF-2006	0300-DEF-1003
0300-DEF-1002	0300-DEF-1001	0311-DEF-2004
0311-DEF-2003	0300-COMM-1004	

**RELATED EVENTS:** INF-MAN-4101

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
2. MCWP 3-11.2 Marine Rifle Squad

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

1. Training areas that support pyrotechnics
2. Live fire and maneuver range
3. Training for this event can be augmented through use of DVTE and VBS2.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:**

1. Small arms to build range cards, assuming 4 TRPs, 1 FPL or PDF
2. All environments applicable (i.e., urban)

---

**INF-MAN-3102:** Conduct a listening post/observation post (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, an order, and supporting a defensive scheme of maneuver during daylight and limited visibility.

**STANDARD:** To provide early warning while seeking to avoid direct enemy contact.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Conduct resupply.
3. Prepare for combat.
4. Execute command and control.
5. Conduct a passage of lines.
6. Move to the LP/OP.
7. Conduct link up, as required.
8. Conduct relief in place, as required.
9. Occupy the LP/OP.

10. Establish security.
11. Conduct weaponeering.
12. Deconflict battlespace geometry.
13. Maintain communications.
14. Improve positions, as necessary.
15. Confirm prescribed routes to friendly lines.
16. Provide early warning.
17. Report information.
18. Conduct link up, as required.
19. Conduct relief in place, as required.
20. Break contact, as required.
21. Move along prescribed route(s) back to defense.
22. Conduct passage of lines.
23. Conduct post combat actions.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

0311-TRNG-2002	0300-FSPT-2001	0300-MED-1001
0300-PAT-1004	0300-PAT-2004	0300-WPNS-2002
0300-WPNS-2001	0300-M203-1005	0300-M203-1004
0300-M203-1003	0300-M203-1002	0300-M203-1001
0300-DEMO-1001	0300-M16-1008	0300-M16-1007
0300-M16-1006	0300-M16-1005	0300-M16-1004
0300-M16-1003	0300-M16-1002	0300-M16-1001
0300-CMBH-1004	0311-TRNG-2001	

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0300-COMM-1005	0300-DEF-1002	0300-COMM-1003
0300-COMM-1002	0300-COMM-1001	0300-OPTS-1001
0300-PAT-1009	0300-PAT-1003	0300-PAT-1002
0300-M203-1005	0300-M203-1003	0300-M203-1002
0300-DEMO-1003	0300-DEMO-1002	0300-M16-1004
0300-M16-1003	0300-M16-1001	0300-CMBH-2004
0300-CMBH-2003	0300-CMBH-1002	0300-CMBH-1001
INF-MAN-3101	0311-DEF-2006	0300-DEF-1003
0300-COMM-1004		

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

---

**INF-MAN-3201:** Conduct a passage of lines (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 1, 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, attachments, an order, and while serving as either the moving or stationary unit.

**STANDARD:** To accomplish the mission, meet the commander's intent, with minimal disruption to operations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Conduct weaponeering.
4. Deconflict geometry of fires.
5. Prepare for combat (pre-combat actions).
6. Execute command and control.
7. Conduct linkup.
8. Set conditions for passage of lines (depart friendly lines).
9. Move through passage route(s).

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0300-COMM-1005	0311-DEF-2006	0300-COMM-1003
0300-COMM-1002	0300-COMM-1001	0300-OPTS-1001
0300-PAT-1007	0311-PAT-2001	0300-MOUT-1001
0300-M203-1005	0300-M203-1003	0300-M203-1002
0300-M203-1001	0300-M16-1004	0300-M16-1003
0300-M16-1001	INF-MAN-3301	INF-MAN-3101
0300-COMM-1004		

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
3. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** ADDITIONAL CONSIDERATIONS:

Planning must be coordinated between stationary and moving units and include control measures for link up, accountability {lead/rear trace}, coordinated casevac plan, coordinated detainee plan, control measures for release point(s).

---

**INF-MAN-3202:** Breach an obstacle (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, attachments, an order, mechanical breaching materials, and a secured obstacle.

**STANDARD:** To gain mobility through an obstacle and accomplish the mission with minimal delay.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Provide near side security.

2. Move to the obstacle.
3. Mechanically breach obstacle.
4. Proof lane.
5. Mark lane.
6. Provide far side security.
7. Support follow-on unit movement through breach lanes.
8. Conduct consolidation, as required.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

0300-COMM-1005	0300-M16-1001	0300-COMM-1003
0300-COMM-1002	0300-COMM-1001	0300-MED-1001
0300-PAT-1005	0300-PAT-1004	0311-OFF-2007
0311-OFF-2005	0311-OFF-2003	0311-OFF-2001
0300-M203-1005	0300-M203-1003	0300-M203-1002
0300-M203-1001	0300-DEMO-2001	0300-M16-1004
0300-M16-1003	0300-COMM-1004	

**RELATED EVENTS:**

0351-DEMO-2012	INF-MAN-4203	0351-DEMO-2003
----------------	--------------	----------------

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
2. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad
3. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)
4. TM 9-1375-213-12 Demolition Materials

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	100 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	20 rounds per Marine
A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac	600 rounds per weapon
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	600 rounds per weapon
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	120 rounds per Marine
A358 Cartridge, 9mm TP-T M939 for AT-4 Tr	1 cartridges per weapon
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 cartridges per weapon
B508 Cartridge, 40mm Green Smoke Ground M	1 cartridges per weapon
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 cartridges per weapon
BA35 Cartridge, 40MM Practice (Day/Night)	2 cartridges per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	1 cartridges per weapon
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 cartridges per weapon
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	2 cartridges per weapon
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	1 grenades per Marine
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	1 fuses per Marine
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	1 grenades per Team
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per Team
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per Team

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17830 Light Demolition Range

EQUIPMENT: Mechanical breaching kit (grappling hook, sledge hammer, halligan tool, etc.).

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Appropriate demolition range (if ammunition is used)
2. Live fire and maneuver range
3. Training for this event can be augmented through use of IIT, DVTE, and VBS2.

---

INF-MAN-3203: Support by fire/overwatch (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, attachments, an order, and a moving or maneuvering unit/echelon scheme of maneuver; while motorized, mechanized, or dismounted; during daylight or limited visibility.

STANDARD: To support maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct assembly area actions.
2. Conduct planning.
3. Conduct resupply.
4. Prep for combat (pre-combat actions).
5. Execute command and control.
6. Execute movement.
7. Occupy firing/overwatch positions.
8. Conduct targeting.
9. Improve positions as necessary.
10. Deconflict battlespace geometry.
11. Execute signal plan.
12. Determine effects on target(s).
13. Adjust fires/overwatch as necessary.
14. Displace as necessary.
15. Consolidate.
16. Conduct post combat actions.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0300-COMM-1005	0300-CMBH-1001	0300-COMM-1003
0300-COMM-1002	0300-COMM-1001	0300-MED-1001
0300-PAT-1004	0300-PAT-1003	0300-PAT-1002
0300-PAT-2005	INF-ASLT-3001	0311-OFF-2005
0311-OFF-2004	0311-OFF-2006	0311-OFF-2003
0311-OFF-2001	0311-MOUT-2001	0300-M203-1005
0300-M203-1003	0300-M203-1002	0300-M203-1001
0300-M16-1004	0300-M16-1003	0300-M16-1002
0300-M16-1001	0300-CMBH-1002	0300-COMM-1004

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machineguns and Machinegun Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	80 rounds per Marine
A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single	20 rounds per Marine
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	80 rounds per Marine
A358 Cartridge, 9mm TP-T M939 for AT-4 Tr	1 round per weapon
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	1 signals per weapon
B509 Cartridge, 40mm Yellow Smoke Ground	1 signals per weapon
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	2 signals per platoon
B546 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M433	2 rounds per weapon
BA35 Cartridge, 40mm Practice (Day/Night)	4 rounds per weapon
C995 Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT	1 rocket per squad
G811 Grenade, Hand Practice Body M69	1 grenades per Team
G878 Fuze, Hand Grenade Practice M228	1 fuses per Team
G881 Grenade, Hand Fragmentation M67	1 grenades per Team
G982 Grenade, Hand Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per Team
G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18	1 grenades per Team
G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83	1 grenades per Team
HA21 Rocket, 21mm Sub-Caliber, M72AS Trai	1 rocket per Team
HA29 Rckt 66mm HE, M72A7, LAW W/GRAZE	1 rocket per Team
L594 Simulator, Projectile Ground Burst M	1 projectiles per Team

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17750 Infantry Squad Battle Course  
Facility Code 17730 Fire And Movement Range  
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training for this event can be augmented through use of IIT, DVTE, and VBS2.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Range will need to support a platoon level attack. Range must support all company weapons and attached weapons, to include dud-producing ordnance and overhead fires.

---

**INF-MAN-3204:** Consolidate (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, an order, and in preparation for follow on operations.

**STANDARD:** To enable preparation for combat while maintaining security, reorganizing the unit, and improving the current position.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Establish and improve all around security. (S)

2. Execute command and control.
3. Displace or reposition elements as required.
4. Position automatic weapons on most likely avenues of enemy approach. (A)
5. Process ammunition, casualty, and equipment (ACE) reports.
6. Redistribute ammunition, personnel, supplies, and equipment.
7. Conduct tactical casualty care as required.
8. Detain/process detainees as required.
9. Conduct information collection.
10. Improve fields of fire, sectors of fire, obstacles. (F)
11. Establish/improve positions/entrenchment. (E)
12. Prepare for follow on operations.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)  
Facility Code 17750 Infantry Squad Battle Course

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training for this event can be augmented through use of IIT, DVTE, and VBS2.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** The list of event components occurs nearly simultaneously.

---

**INF-MAN-3205:** Conduct a link up (B)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a unit, an order, contact/linkup point(s), and while serving as either the moving or stationary unit.

**STANDARD:** To linkup with a friendly unit.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct Planning.
2. Conduct weaponeering.
3. Deconflict the geometry of fires.
4. Prepare for Combat Operations.
5. Execute Command and Control.
6. Set conditions for linkup.
7. Move to contact point.
8. Moving unit initiates far recognition signal.
9. Stationary responds with far recognition signal.
10. Stationary unit initiates near recognition signal.
11. Moving responds with near recognition signal.
12. Complete link up.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0300-COMM-1005	0300-COMM-1004	0300-COMM-1003
0300-COMM-1002	0300-COMM-1001	INF-MAN-3301
0300-PAT-1008	0300-PAT-1004	0300-PAT-1003
0300-PAT-1002	0311-PAT-2001	0300-OPTS-1001

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Training for this event can be augmented through use of DVTE and VBS2.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Planning must be coordinated between stationary and moving units, must include control measures for link up, accountability, signal plan, coordinated casevac plan. Link up can be physical or non-physical.

---

INF-MAN-3206: Detain personnel (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, an order, and apprehended personnel.

STANDARD: To ensure safe and expeditious handling of detainees in accordance with the laws of armed conflict, rules of engagement, and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Search detainees for weapons, ammunition, and any other items that may provide potential intelligence value. (S)
2. Record initial findings.
3. Tag detainees. (T)
4. Report personnel detained. (R)
5. Evacuate to a detainee collection point. (E)
6. Segregate detainees based on perceived status of authority or position. (S)
7. Safeguard detainees. (S)
8. Complete documentation.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 4-11.8C Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
3. MCWP 3-11.2 w chl Marine Rifle Squad

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17904 Prisoner Of War Training Area  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

EQUIPMENT: Detainee kits.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Role players
2. Enemy documents/Information/weapons
3. TSE Kit
4. IIT

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. The search should include all clothing on the individual, to include shoes. To ensure the safety and security of the capturing force, do not exempt anything from search.
2. Recording initial findings follows the need to photograph, sketch, witness statements and the details of the detainee and related equipment or documentation found, etc.
3. Tag detainees with a DD Form 2745 (Capture Tag) or a field-expedient capture tag that includes the following information: date and time of capture, capturing unit, location of capture (grid coordinates), special circumstances of capture (how the person was captured, if the detainee resisted, if the detainee surrendered, and so forth), did the person have weapons on them at the time of capture, list all documents and other items on their person at the time of capture as well as a sketch of findings locations, etc.
4. Deliver all documents/pocket litter captured with the detainee(s) in order to assist in questioning.
5. Unit should incorporate cultural and gender considerations into the event.

---

INF-MAN-3207: Conduct tactical casualty care (D)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a unit, an order, and casualties.

STANDARD: To treat and prepare casualties for evacuation in a timely manner.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish security.
2. Provide care under fire, as required.
3. Move casualties to safe area, as required.
4. Provide tactical casualty care.
5. Maintain control of serialized weapons/gear.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0300-COMM-2001	0300-COMM-1005	0300-COMM-1004
0300-COMM-1003	0300-MED-1001	0300-COMM-1001
0300-COMM-2004	0311-TRNG-2001	0311-TRNG-2002

0300-COMM-1002

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 4-11.1A MTPP for Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries
2. MCWP 4-11.1 Health Service Support Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces  
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Initial reporting is part of the coordination for transport. Final reporting is part of maintaining accountability.

---

INF-MAN-3301: Conduct a patrol (B)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a fire team, a mission, commander's intent, a fighting load, and while functioning as part of a larger unit.

STANDARD: To achieve commander's intent and without compromising the patrol.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Move in assigned formation.
2. Move as a base unit.
3. Maintain contact with the base unit.
4. Comply with tactical control measures.
5. Provide security in assigned sectors.
6. Execute immediate actions.

CHAINED EVENTS:

0300-COMM-1005	0300-FSPT-2001	0300-COMM-1003
0300-COMM-1002	0300-COMM-1001	0300-TRNG-2001
0300-OPTS-1001	0300-MED-1001	0300-PAT-1009
0300-PAT-1008	0300-PAT-1007	0300-PAT-1005
0300-PAT-1004	0300-PAT-1003	0300-PAT-1002
0300-PAT-1001	0311-PAT-2001	0300-PAT-2006
0300-PAT-2005	0300-PAT-2004	0300-PAT-2003
0300-PAT-2002	0300-PAT-2001	0300-MOUT-1001
0300-M203-1005	0300-M203-1004	0300-M203-1003
0300-M203-1002	0300-M203-1001	0300-DEMO-1002
0300-M16-1004	0300-M16-1003	0300-M16-1002
0300-M16-1001	0300-CMBH-1002	0300-CMBH-1001
0300-COMM-1004		

RELATED EVENTS: INF-MAN-4303

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-11.2 Marine Rifle Squad
2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Training for this event can be augmented through use of IIT, DVTE, and VBS2.

---

**INF-MGUN-3001:** Occupy a firing position (D)

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** 2, 3, 4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a machinegun team, mission, commander's intent, an area to occupy, and a supported unit scheme of maneuver, while wearing the assault load.

**STANDARD:** To support the unit's scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Establish security.
2. Reconnoiter tentative position.
3. Move by stealth or by force to the selected position.
4. Integrate sectors of fire with adjacent machinegun team.
5. Incorporate local security to support the machinegun team.
6. Establish primary/alternate/supplementary positions as needed.
7. Establish communications.
8. Improve positions as necessary.
9. Perform continuing actions as necessary.
10. Conduct follow on missions as required.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

0331-WPNS-1008	0331-LMG-1001	0331-WPNS-1006
0331-WPNS-1005	0331-WPNS-1004	0331-WPNS-1003
0331-WPNS-1002	0331-WPNS-1001	0331-M2-1014
0331-M2-1013	0331-M2-1012	0331-M2-1011
0331-M2-1010	0331-M2-1009	0331-M2-1008
0331-M2-1005	0331-M2-1004	0331-M2-1003
0331-M2-1002	0331-M2-1001	0331-MMG-1025
0331-MMG-1022	0331-MMG-1020	0331-MMG-2001
0331-MMG-1014	0331-MMG-1013	0331-MMG-1004
0331-MMG-1001	0331-MK19-1011	0331-MK19-1010
0331-MK19-1009	0331-MK19-1008	0331-MK19-1007
0331-MK19-1006	0331-MK19-1004	0331-MK19-1003
0331-MK19-1002	0331-MK19-1001	0331-LMG-1008
0331-LMG-1007	0331-LMG-1006	0331-LMG-1005
0331-LMG-1004	0331-LMG-1003	0331-LMG-1002
0331-WPNS-1007		

CHAINED EVENTS:

0331-EMPL-1007	0331-IMG-1001	0331-EMPL-1002
0331-EMPL-1001	0331-EMPL-2013	0331-EMPL-2012
0331-EMPL-2011	0331-EMPL-2010	0331-EMPL-2005
0331-EMPL-2003	0331-EMPL-2002	0331-EMPL-2001
0331-WPNS-1004	0331-M2-1005	0331-M2-1004
0331-M2-1002	0331-MMG-1004	0331-MMG-1001
0331-MK19-1004	0331-MK19-1003	0331-MK19-1002
0331-EMPL-1006		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-22.68 Light and Medium machineguns
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machineguns and Machinegun Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17582 Automated Multipurpose Machine Gun Range (MPMG)  
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This covers offense or defense operations while mounted or dismounted.
  2. The event covers the full range of environmental conditions includes daylight, limited visibility, urban, rural, littoral, arctic, jungle, mountain, etc.
-

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 8

MOS 0300 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE. . . . .	8000	8-2
EVENT CODING . . . . .	8001	8-2
INDEX OF 0300 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS. . . . .	8002	8-3
1000-LEVEL EVENTS. . . . .	8003	8-6
2000-LEVEL EVENTS. . . . .	8004	8-55

INFANTRY T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 8

MOS 0300 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

**8000. PURPOSE.** This chapter details the individual events that pertain to the Infantry Occupational Field (OccFld). These events are linked to a service-level Mission Essential Tasks (MET). This linkage tailor's individual training for the selected MET. Each individual event provides an event title, along with the conditions events will be performed under and the standard to which the event must be performed to be successful.

**8001. EVENT CODING.** Events in this T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12-character, 3-field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology

a. Field one. This field represents the community. This chapter contains the following community codes:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
0300	Basic Infantryman

b. Field two. This field represents the functional/duty area. This chapter contains the following functional/duty areas:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
CBRN	Chemical, Biological, Radiological, Nuclear
CMBH	Combat Hunter
COMM	Communications
COND	Combat Conditioning
DEF	Defense
DEMO	Demolitions
FSPT	Fire Support
ISUL	Infantry Small Unit Leadership
M16	M16 Service Rifle
M203	M203 Grenade Launcher
M9	M9 Service Pistol
MED	Medical
MOBL	Mobility
MOUT	Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
OFF	Offense
OPTS	Optics
PAT	Patrolling
TRNG	Training
TVEH	Tactical Vehicle
WPNS	Weapons

c. Field three. This field provides the level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing of events. This chapter contains the following event levels:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
1000	Core Skills

2000 Core Plus Skills

8002. INDEX OF 0300 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

EVENT CODE	EVENT	PAGE
<b>1000-LEVEL</b>		
<b>CBRN</b>		
0300-CBRN-1001	Perform operator maintenance for a field protective mask	8-6
0300-CBRN-1002	Drink from a canteen	8-7
0300-CBRN-1003	Perform MOPP gear exchange	8-7
0300-CBRN-1004	Perform immediate decontamination	8-8
0300-CBRN-1005	Perform self-aid for a nerve agent	8-9
<b>COMBAT HUNTER</b>		
0300-CMBH-1001	Conduct observation	8-10
0300-CMBH-1002	Identify anomalies	8-11
0300-CMBH-1003	Interpret spoor	8-12
0300-CMBH-1004	Explain the decision cycle (OODA) process	8-13
0300-CMBH-1005	Utilize tactical questioning	8-13
<b>COMMUNICATIONS</b>		
0300-COMM-1001	Communicate using hand and arm signals	8-14
0300-COMM-1002	Communicate using limited visibility signals	8-15
0300-COMM-1003	Communicate using wired communications	8-16
0300-COMM-1004	Communicate using squad wireless communications	8-16
0300-COMM-1005	Operate a VHF field radio	8-17
0300-COMM-1006	Submit a message using NATO report format	8-17
<b>COMBAT CONDITIONING</b>		
0300-COND-1001	March under an existence load	8-18
<b>DEFENSE</b>		
0300-DEF-1001	Construct a two-man fighting hole	8-18
0300-DEF-1002	Construct a hasty fighting position	8-19
0300-DEF-1003	Defend a position	8-20
<b>DEMOLITIONS</b>		
0300-DEMO-1001	Qualify on the grenade distance and accuracy course	8-21
0300-DEMO-1002	Engage targets with the M67 fragmentation grenade	8-21
0300-DEMO-1003	Emplace an M18A1 Claymore mine	8-22
<b>M16</b>		
0300-M16-1001	Perform weapons handling procedures with a service rifle/Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR)	8-23
0300-M16-1002	Maintain a service rifle	8-23
0300-M16-1003	Perform corrective action with a service rifle	8-24
0300-M16-1004	Demonstrate weapons carries with a service rifle/Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR)	8-25
0300-M16-1005	Zero a Rifle Combat Optic (RCO) to a service rifle	8-25
0300-M16-1006	BZO the Back Up Iron Sight (BUIS) to a service rifle	8-26
0300-M16-1007	Zero a Mini Integrated Pointer Illuminator Module (MIPIM) to a service rifle/Infantry Automatic Rifle (IAR)	8-27

0300-M16-1008	Execute Fundamental Rifle Marksmanship Table 1A	8-28
0300-M16-1009	Execute Basic Combat Rifle Marksmanship Table 2	8-28
0300-M16-1010	Execute Intermediate Combat Rifle Marksmanship Table 3A Short Range Day	8-29
0300-M16-1011	Execute Intermediate Combat Rifle Marksmanship Table 3B Short Range Night	8-30
0300-M16-1012	Execute Intermediate Combat Rifle Marksmanship Table 3C Unknown Distance Day	8-31
0300-M16-1013	Execute Intermediate Combat Rifle Marksmanship Table 3D Known Distance Night	8-31
0300-M16-1014	Execute Advanced Combat Rifle Marksmanship Table 4A Short Range Day	8-32
0300-M16-1015	Execute Advanced Combat Rifle Marksmanship Table 4B Short Range Night	8-33
0300-M16-1016	Execute Advanced Combat Rifle Marksmanship Table 4C Unknown Distance Day	8-34
0300-M16-1017	Execute Advanced Combat Rifle Marksmanship Table 4D Unknown Distance Night	8-34
<b>M203</b>		
0300-M203-1001	Maintain an M203 grenade launcher	8-35
0300-M203-1002	Perform weapons handling procedures for the M203 grenade launcher	8-35
0300-M203-1003	Perform misfire procedures for an M203 grenade launcher	8-36
0300-M203-1004	Zero a M203 grenade launcher	8-37
0300-M203-1005	Engage targets with a grenade launcher	8-38
<b>MEDICAL</b>		
0300-MED-1001	Perform tactical field care on a casualty	8-38
<b>MOUT</b>		
0300-MOUT-1001	Perform individual movement in an urban environment	8-39
0300-MOUT-1002	Perform individual actions while clearing a room	8-40
<b>OFFENSE</b>		
0300-OFF-1001	Perform actions in a hasty firing position	8-40
<b>OPTICS</b>		
0300-OPTS-1001	Utilize limited visibility devices	8-41
<b>PATROLLING</b>		
0300-PAT-1001	Determine the error in a lensatic compass	8-42
0300-PAT-1002	Navigate with a map and compass	8-42
0300-PAT-1003	Navigate with a compass	8-43
0300-PAT-1004	Prepare for combat	8-44
0300-PAT-1005	Perform individual movement techniques	8-44
0300-PAT-1006	Handle detainees	8-45
0300-PAT-1007	Perform individual actions in passage of lines	8-46
0300-PAT-1008	Perform individual actions in a patrol	8-46
0300-PAT-1009	Perform individual actions upon contact with the enemy	8-47
0300-PAT-1010	Perform individual actions from a vehicle	8-48
0300-PAT-1011	Visually identify Improvised Explosive Device (IED)	8-48
0300-PAT-1012	React to an Improvised Explosive Device (IED)	8-49
<b>WEAPONS</b>		
0300-WPNS-1001	Inspect the AT-4 light anti-armor weapon	8-49
0300-WPNS-1002	Engage target with an AT-4 light anti-armor weapon	8-50

0300-WPNS-1003	Perform misfire procedures for an AT-4 light anti-armor weapon	8-51
0300-WPNS-1004	Engage targets with an M72 series Light Anti-armor Weapon	8-52
0300-WPNS-1005	Perform misfire procedures for a Light Anti-Armor Weapon (M72A7 series)	8-53
0300-WPNS-1006	Handle small arms threat weapons	8-54
<b>2000 LEVEL EVENTS</b>		
<b>COMBAT HUNTER</b>		
0300-CMBH-2001	Analyze spoor	8-54
0300-CMBH-2002	Perform individual action in a tracking team	8-55
0300-CMBH-2003	Develop an integrated observation plan	8-56
0300-CMBH-2004	Profile an anomaly	8-57
0300-CMBH-2005	Lead a combat tracking team in a follow up	8-57
0300-CMBH-2006	Maintain relationship	8-58
0300-CMBH-2007	Conduct combat policing	8-59
0300-CMBH-2008	Establish relationship	8-59
<b>COMMUNICATIONS</b>		
0300-COMM-2001	Submit a helicopter landing zone brief	8-60
0300-COMM-2002	Submit a shell report	8-60
0300-COMM-2003	Submit a casualty report	8-61
0300-COMM-2004	Operate a UHF field radio	8-62
0300-COMM-2005	Operate Satellite Communication (SATCOM) devices	8-62
0300-COMM-2006	Employ a field expedient antenna	8-63
<b>DEMOLITIONS</b>		
0300-DEMO-2001	Probe for a mine	8-64
<b>FIRE SUPPORT</b>		
0300-FSPT-2001	Plan supporting arms	8-64
0300-FSPT-2002	Call for indirect fire using the grid method	8-65
0300-FSPT-2003	Call for indirect fire using the polar method	8-66
0300-FSPT-2004	Call for indirect fire using the shift from a known point method	8-68
0300-FSPT-2005	Act as an observer for Close Air Support (CAS) Type II or Type III terminal attack control	8-70
<b>INFANTRY SMALL UNIT LEADERSHIP</b>		
0300-ISUL-2501	Lead a squad	8-71
<b>M9</b>		
0300-M9-2001	Perform weapons handling procedures with the service pistol	8-72
0300-M9-2002	Perform operator maintenance for the service pistol	8-72
0300-M9-2003	Engage targets with the service pistol	8-73
0300-M9-2004	Qualify with the service pistol	8-73
<b>MOBILITY</b>		
0300-MOBL-2001	Lead a team/squad in convoy/motorized operations	8-74
0300-MOBL-2003	Conduct mounted land navigation	8-75
<b>PATROLLING</b>		
0300-PAT-2001	Develop a warning order	8-76
0300-PAT-2002	Write a combat order	8-76
0300-PAT-2003	Issue a combat order	8-77
0300-PAT-2004	Develop a map overlay	8-78
0300-PAT-2005	Select a route utilizing a topographical map	8-78
0300-PAT-2006	Navigate with a Global Positioning System (GPS)	8-79
<b>TRAINING</b>		

0300-TRNG-2001	Lead a debrief	8-79
0300-TRNG-2002	Construct an Operational Risk Management (ORM) assessment	8-80
0300-TRNG-2003	Conduct small unit training	8-81
<b>TACTICAL VEHICLE</b>		
0300-TVEH-2001	Establish a load plan for a tactical vehicle	8-81
0300-TVEH-2002	Prepare an immobilized vehicle for towing operations from the front	8-82
0300-TVEH-2003	Perform hydraulic winch operations with a tactical vehicle	8-82
0300-TVEH-2004	Conduct non-standard recovery methods for a tactical vehicle	8-83
0300-TVEH-2005	Maneuver a tactical vehicle during off-road operations	8-84
0300-TVEH-2006	Camouflage a tactical vehicle	8-84
0300-TVEH-2009	Communicate using hand and arm signals	8-85
0300-TVEH-2010	Perform tactical vehicle maneuvers	8-86
0300-TVEH-2015	Communicate using organic tactical vehicle radio communications equipment	8-86
0300-TVEH-2017	Provide security during vehicle security halts	8-87
<b>WEAPONS</b>		
0300-WPNS-2001	Zero the Laser Boresight	8-87
0300-WPNS-2002	Boresight a weapon using the Laser Boresight System	8-88

**8003. 1000-LEVEL EVENTS**

**0300-CBRN-1001:** Perform operator maintenance for a field protective mask

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 0300, 0302, 0306, 0311, 0317, 0331, 0341, 0351, 0352, 0369

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a field protective mask and authorized cleaning supplies.

**STANDARD:** By ensuring serviceability of field protective mask.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Disassemble the mask.
2. Inspect for cleanliness and serviceability.
3. Clean the mask.
4. Reassemble the mask.
5. Perform a function check.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TM 3-4240-339-10 Operator's Manual for Chemical-Biological Mask, M40

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

EQUIPMENT:

1. M40 field protective mask
  2. Cleaning supplies
  3. M50 field protective mask
- 

0300-CBRN-1002: Drink from a canteen

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 0300, 0302, 0306, 0311, 0317, 0331, 0341, 0351, 0352, 0369

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a canteen of water with an NBC cap and while wearing MOPP Level 4.

STANDARD: Without becoming contaminated.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Attach the canteen to the mask drinking tube.
2. Drink from the canteen.
3. Detach the canteen.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 3-4240-339-10 Operator's Manual for Chemical-Biological Mask, M40

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT:

1. MOPP suits/NBC equipment
  2. M40 field protective mask
  3. M50 field protective mask
- 

0300-CBRN-1003: Perform MOPP gear exchange

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 0300, 0302, 0306, 0311, 0317, 0331, 0341, 0351, 0352, 0369

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a decontamination kit, a new protective ensemble, a partner and a secure uncontaminated environment, while in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: Without becoming contaminated.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Decontaminate gear.
2. Prepare for decontamination.
3. Decontaminate mask and remove hood.
4. Remove overgarment and overboots.
5. Remove gloves.
6. Put on new overgarment.
7. Put on new overboots and gloves.
8. Secure hood.
9. Secure gear.

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination (FM 3-5)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**EQUIPMENT:**

1. M40 Field Protective Mask
  2. MOPP gear
  3. Individual Decontamination Kit
  4. M50 field protective mask
- 

**0300-CBRN-1004:** Perform immediate decontamination

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 0300, 0302, 0306, 0311, 0317, 0331, 0341, 0351, 0352, 0369

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given the currently fielded individual decontamination kit and a field protective mask with carrier, while wearing an assault load.

**STANDARD:** To remove contaminate.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Don and clear the field protective mask.
2. Seek overhead cover or use a poncho for protection against further contamination.
3. Remove 1 individual decontamination kit packet from the carrying pouch.
4. Tear the individual decontamination kit packet open at the notch. Remove applicator pad and discard empty packet.
5. Unfold the individual decontamination kit applicator pad and slip finger(s) into the handle.
6. Thoroughly scrub exposed skin on one hand until completely covered with black powder from the individual decontamination kit applicator pad.
7. Switch the applicator pad to the other hand and repeat step 6. Do not discard the pad when finished.
8. If unmasked when contaminated, stop breathing. Remove mask and thoroughly scrub exposed skin of face until completely covered with black powder, using the same individual decontamination kit applicator pad that was used on the hands.

9. Use a second individual decontamination kit applicator pad to thoroughly scrub exposed skin of the neck and ears until completely covered with black powder.
10. If masked without the hood secured tight when contaminated, thoroughly scrub exposed skin of the neck and ears until completely covered with black powder, using the same individual decontamination kit applicator pad that was used on the hands.
11. Redo hands until completely covered with black powder.
12. Put on protective gloves.
13. Secure hood.
14. Use the individual decontamination kit to remove liquid contamination from the exterior of the individual weapon.
15. Use the individual decontamination kit to decontaminate the magazine, feed-tray, shoulder stock and trigger assembly, as appropriate.
16. Decontaminate the protective gloves using the individual decontamination kit.
17. Remove powder from the individual decontamination kit with soap and water when operational conditions permit.
18. Bury the used applicator pads and packets, if circumstances permit.

**RELATED EVENTS:** 0300-CBRN-1005

**REFERENCES:**

1. MCRP 4-11.1A MTTP for Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries
2. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination (FM 3-5)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**EQUIPMENT:**

1. MOPP suits/NBC equipment
2. M40 field protective mask
3. Individual Decontamination Kit
3. M50 field protective mask
4. Poncho

---

**0300-CBRN-1005:** Perform self-aid for a nerve agent

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**MOS PERFORMING:** 0300, 0302, 0306, 0311, 0317, 0331, 0341, 0351, 0352, 0369

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, 1STSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT, SGTMAJ, CWO-2, CWO-3, CWO-4, CWO-5, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, COL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given the currently fielded nerve agent antidote, MOPP gear and a field protective mask with carrier, while wearing an assault load.

**STANDARD:** Without becoming a casualty.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Don and clear an M40 field protective mask.
2. Identify the symptoms of the nerve agent.

3. Administer the nerve agent antidote.
4. Upgrade to MOPP Level 4.
5. Seek medical attention.

RELATED EVENTS: 0300-CBRN-1004

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 4-11.1A MTTP for Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT:

1. M40 Field Protective Mask
2. MOPP gear
3. Currently fielded Nerve Agent Antidote Kit
4. M50 field protective mask.

---

0300-CMBH-1001: Conduct observation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 0300, 0302, 0306, 0311, 0317, 0331, 0341, 0351, 0352, 0369

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, CWO-2, CWO-3, 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an area to observe, with or without the aid of observation devices, while wearing an assault load.

STANDARD: To detect anomalies.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct a hasty search.
2. Conduct a detailed search.
3. Build Sector Sketch.
4. Establish a baseline.
5. Maintain observation.
6. Record information.
7. Report as required.

RELATED EVENTS: 0300-CMBH-1002

REFERENCES:

1. MCIP 3-11.01 Combat Hunter Operations
2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
3. MCWP 3-15.3 Scout Sniping

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces